

The Project Gutenberg eBook of Early western travels, 1748-1846, Volume 2 (of 2)

This ebook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this ebook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

Title: Early western travels, 1748-1846, Volume 2 (of 2)

Editor: Reuben Gold Thwaites

Release date: March 11, 2025 [eBook #75593]

Language: English

Original publication: Cleveland: The Arthur H. Clark Company, 1904

Credits: Richard Tonsing, Greg Bergquist, and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at <https://www.pgdp.net> (This file was produced from images generously made available by The Internet Archive/American Libraries.)

*** START OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK EARLY WESTERN TRAVELS, 1748-1846,
VOLUME 2 (OF 2) ***

Early Western Travels

1748–1846

Volume II

Early Western Travels

1748–1846

A Series of Annotated Reprints of some of the best and rarest contemporary Volumes of Travel, descriptive of the Aborigines and Social and Economic Conditions in the Middle and Far West, during the Period of Early American Settlement

Edited with Notes, Introductions, Index, etc., by

Reuben Gold Thwaites

Editor of "The Jesuit Relations and Allied Documents," "Wisconsin Historical Collections," "Chronicles of Border Warfare," "Hennepin's New Discovery," etc.

Volume II

John Long's Journal, 1768–1782

[Logo]

Cleveland, Ohio

The Arthur H. Clark Company

1904

Copyright 1904, by

THE ARTHUR H. CLARK COMPANY

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

The Lakeside Press

R. R. DONNELLEY & SONS COMPANY

CHICAGO

CONTENTS OF VOLUME II

Preface. The Editor 9

Voyages and Travels of an Indian Interpreter and Trader, describing the Manners and Customs of the North American Indians; with an Account of the Posts situated on the River Saint Laurence, Lake Ontario, &c. April 10, 1768–Spring, 1782. John Long

Author's Dedication 22

List of Subscribers 23

Author's Preface 27

Voyages and Travels 33

Vocabulary

English-Esquimeaux	223
English-Iroquois, Algonkin, Chippeway	224
English-Algonkin, Chippeway	238
English-Mohegan, Shawanee	250
English-Mohegan, Algonkin, Chippeway	252
English-Iroquois	254
English-French	257
English-Chippeway	259
Chippeway-English	289
Familiar Phrases: English-Chippeway	317

ILLUSTRATIONS TO VOLUME II

Facsimile (reduced) of original title-page	21
Map: "Sketch of the Western Countries of Canada, 1791." Facsimile of original	32
9	

PREFACE

The second volume of our series of Early Western Travels is devoted to the reprint of John Long's *Voyages and Travels of an Indian Interpreter and Trader*, originally published in London in 1791.

Concerning Long, but little is known further than what he himself relates in his book. Coming from England to North America in 1768, he passed nearly twenty years upon this continent, chiefly consorting with the Indians—learning their languages, wearing their garb, living their life. An expert woodsman, fur-trader, and explorer, he penetrated into regions north and west of Canada, that are still practically unexplored.

At first an articled clerk in Canada, he later was apprenticed to a Montreal fur merchant. Having displayed an adaptability for Indian philology, Long was sent to the neighboring mission colony at Caughnawaga, where he remained seven years, becoming an adept in the arts and occupations of savage life. His term of service having expired, the excitements of army life attracted him. The American Revolution had just broken out, and volunteering for service with the British he was detailed to lead Indian parties to hang upon the flanks of the invading American army—one of these expeditions captured the famous Ethan Allen. After a year and a half of this service, in which—dressed as an Indian, and scalping his prisoners in their fashion—he could scarcely be distinguished from a brave, Governor Guy Carleton appointed Long a midshipman in the 10th navy. But when his vessel sailed for England, he left the sea in order to enter upon the more lucrative business of fur-trading.

In May, 1777, Long left Montreal for Mackinac, engaged as a bourgeois to lead a party of voyageurs into the far Northwest, and trade with the Indians on their own hunting grounds. The independent Canadian merchants of this period were endeavoring to maintain the old French connections with the Indians of the “upper country,” and at the same time to undermine the trade of the Hudson’s Bay Company, by intercepting the natives before they reached the posts of the latter. Long was assigned to the Nipigon district north and northeast of Lake Superior—a region early occupied by the French, and the scene of their hardy and audacious enterprises against the Hudson Bay trade.

Cameron[1] defines the limits of this region as follows: “Bounded on the south by Lake Superior, on the southwest and west, by the northwest road from Lake Superior to the lower end of Lake Ouinipique (Winnipeg); on the northwest and north by Hayes river and part of Hudson Bay; and on the northeast by Hudson Bay. Its greatest length from Pierre Rouge (Red Rock), at the entrance of Nipigon River, to the Lake of the Islands, on the Hayes river, is about three hundred and fifty leagues and its greatest breadth, from Trout Lake to Eagle Lake, is about one hundred and eighty leagues, but in most parts not over eighty leagues. The two-thirds at least of this country are nothing but rivers and lakes, some fifty leagues long; properly speaking, the whole country is nothing but water and islands.” Into this watery wilderness Long and his voyageurs pushed their way, literally subsisting on the country. The bourgeois’s chief qualification for the enterprise was his familiarity with the Indian life and language, and the fact that he had undergone the ceremony of adoption by one of the most noted chiefs of the Chippewa nation.

During the French régime, this country was noted for producing the largest number and best quality of furs in the Northwest;^[2] but after the English occupation the district had been nearly abandoned, the difficulties of existence proving too great. Four out of eight traders starved to death in the region in one year, and it was avoided in favor of the better-provisioned Western districts. Cameron says that in 1785 the whole district produced but fifty-six packs of furs. We may judge from this of Long's success as a trader; in the first year, he not only subsisted himself and a party of eight Canadians, during the "hardest winter ever remembered," but rescued a brother trader from destruction by a murderous band of Indians, and brought out a cargo of a hundred and forty packs of furs all in good condition, valued between \$25,000 and \$30,000. For these services he received from his chiefs the salary of \$750 a year, and a supply of Indian corn and "hard grease," or tallow, as provision.^[3]

At the end of his first year's engagement, Long returned only to Pays Plat, a trading station on Lake Superior. Being there relieved of his furs, and supplied with fresh provisions, he set out August 15, 1778, for another 12winter in the "inlands," whither, after many hardships and experiences with murderous Indians, he returned to Mackinac, and spent the following winter with the Chippewas near that fort.

In June, 1780, he joined a party of Canadians and Indians who were sent from Mackinac to Prairie du Chien to secure the deposits of furs at the latter place, and prevent them from falling into the hands of the emissaries of George Rogers Clark from the Illinois, and the Spaniards from St. Louis. After a march through Wisconsin, this undertaking was successfully accomplished—the furs that could not be saved being burned to keep them from the enemy.^[4]

The following autumn, Long returned to Quebec never again to come to the "upper country." He made one more successful trading expedition to unknown lands, by way of the Saguenay River and Lake St. John, penetrating the country east of Hudson Bay, and bringing back a rich cargo—in the very year that the Hudson's Bay Company was pillaged by the French expedition of La Pérouse.

Long returned for a year to England, his mother-land being entirely strange to him after fifteen years' absence. He was, therefore, glad to fit out a cargo for another venture in the

Indian trade of Canada. But his good fortune seems now to have deserted him—debt, lack of employment, and other difficulties drove him from one place to another. In the spring of 1785 he was in New York, where he pushed the claim of a Huron Indian through Congress. A fur-trading expedition among the Iroquois failed, and the British commandant at Oswego confiscated his goods. Taking refuge among his Loyalist friends near Kingston, he received a grant of land for his services, but debt drove him from that; and after securing some assistance from the authorities, he returned to England in the fall of 1788,[5] there to write and publish the volume of his adventures.

He appears to have secured some patronage for this work, as is evidenced by the list of subscribers, and the dedication to Sir Joseph Banks. He also consulted the best available authorities on Indian traditions and Canadian history, and seems to have taken pains to verify his own experiences and observations, without slavishly following his authorities.[6] In his defense of the Hudson's Bay Company, there is to be noted either a desire to secure its favor for future services, or pique in relation to the new North West Company, under some one of whose partners he had undoubtedly served. The book, which was published in 1791, attained considerable popularity. It was favorably reviewed in the *Monthly Review* (June, 1792), and translated into both French and German. The French translation, made by J. B. L. J. Billecocq, with notes by the translator (but without the vocabularies, a fact deplored by French philologists),[7] appeared in 1794, and again in 1810. Two German translations were made, the first by B. Gottlob Hoffmann, issued in 1791; the second by G. Forster, published in Berlin the following year.

The interest of the work, aside from incidental historical references to expeditions in Canada and Wisconsin during the Revolution, the Loyalist settlements, and the retention of the Northern posts, lies in the author's intimate knowledge of Indian life and customs, especially those of the more primitive and savage tribes of the North; and in the light he incidentally throws on the history of the fur-trade.[8]

It is anything but an engaging picture which Long paints of his Indian friends and companions—they are in the stage of downright savagery, debauched by contact with the dregs of civilization, learning its vices, appropriating its weapons, and dominating the whites by sheer force of numbers, and knowledge of the weakness and greed of the latter. A pleasant contrast is his account of the Canadian mission Indians; but even these proved their savagery during the American Revolution. Of their aboriginal customs, Long's notices

of totemism, religious rites and beliefs, courtship and marriage, social customs—games, dances, food, dwellings—habits of hunting, and physical and mental characteristics, are valuable because original and the result of immediate observation.

Scarcely less dark is the picture presented by Long, of the fur-trade and the traders. This was the period of unlicensed and almost ruinous competition between the great company at the North, and the independent merchants from Canada—the latter acting each for himself, with slight regard for the interest of the trade, the Indians, or the lesser employees.

The fur-trade under the French régime had been under strict surveillance. All traders were required to purchase a government license, and the products of their traffic were closely inspected. By the close of the French rule, even the lawless *coureurs de bois*—trading through the forest at will, and carrying their peltries to the English at Albany and Hudson Bay—had been quite largely suppressed, and brought into the service of the licensed traders.

After the conquest of New France, a period of cutthroat competition began. The English traders did not at first dare venture into the wilderness peopled with Indians faithful to the French; those who did, nearly paid the penalty with their lives (as witness Alexander Henry, at Mackinac). But after Pontiac's War, and the gradual subsidence of Indian hostility, British traders from Montreal and Quebec began reaching out for this lucrative traffic, and a class of enterprising entrepreneurs was developed, recruited chiefly from the ranks of Scotchmen. By them the fur-trade was pushed to its highest development, and the rivers, lakes, and fastnesses of the great Northwest discovered and explored in rapid succession. This work was done by such men as the Henrys, Ponds, Frobishers, Finlays, Camerons, McDonalds—and, greatest of all, Sir Alexander Mackenzie.

By 1780, they began to unite their fortunes, and a sixteen-share stock corporation was formed of the principal traders.[9] A conspiracy of the Indians in the same year, to massacre all the whites and pillage the posts, was discovered and averted; but by the following season a still more terrible scourge had begun. Smallpox appeared among the tribes in the Northwest, and spread so rapidly that hunting was but languidly carried on, and profits fell to the zero mark. To avert the chaos into which the trade seemed falling, the

North West Company was established in 1783, for a term of five years. In 1787 its organization was perfected, and the corporate period of the Canadian fur-trade began; competitors were gradually bought out—union with the X Y Company occurring in 1805, and with the Hudson's Bay Company in 1821.

Long's narrative, therefore, portrays conditions during the period of the free trader, responsible to no authority, exploiting the country and the natives for the largest immediate returns, without reference to the preservation of the hunting grounds or the protection of the hunters. The frightful debauchery of the Indians by means of traders' rum, and the necessity for the use of laudanum to control their drunken excesses, are shown in full by Long in his simple narrative of events. The dangers, also, to which this system exposed the trader, are only too evident from his relation of the case of Mr. Shaw. As for the competition with the Hudson's Bay Company, it is plain from Long's narrative that the Canadian traders were encroaching on the hunting grounds of this great monopoly. The case of M. Jacques Santeron shows the possibility of dishonest men passing from one employ to the other.

As for the rest of the picture, Long presents the usual traits of the trader and interpreter—a certain rude honesty, taking the form of loyalty to his employer, a disregard of dangers, and small concern for hardships. His knowledge of wilderness life was intimate, but to this fact he alludes only in an incidental way. In acquaintance with Indian character, and power of influencing them in a crisis, he seems to have been superior to the ordinary trader. His vices were those of his class—slight regard for laws, either moral or military (witness the incident at Fort Mackinac), improvidence and wastefulness, restlessness, and dissatisfaction with the routine life of towns. His literary style, while discursive, is simple, and as clear as running water. What he wishes to say, he says plainly, leaving the reader as a rule to draw his own conclusions. There is an unvarnished, unflinching directness in his statements, conveying to the reader the impression that he is concealing nothing, doing nought for effect, but telling a straightforward story of travels and adventures. The book forms a contribution of note to this important class of literature, and will always be readable.

In the preparation of the notes, the Editor has had, as in the first volume of the series, the assistance of Dr. Louise Phelps Kellogg, of the Wisconsin Historical Library. He has also had helpful suggestions from Dr. James Bain, Jr., of the Toronto Public Library.

R. G. T.

Madison, Wis., February, 1904.

19

Long's Voyages and Travels—1768–1782

Reprint of the original edition: London, 1791

21Facsimile (reduced) of original title-page

22

TO SIR JOSEPH BANKS, BART. PRESIDENT OF THE ROYAL SOCIETY,[10] &c. &c. &c.

Sir,

I feel the highest satisfaction in being permitted to dedicate this work to one whose pursuits have ever been more peculiarly directed to objects of originality, and whose scientific researches have contributed so largely to the information and benefit of society.

The public are too well acquainted with your general knowledge in every branch of literature, to suspect that I hold the language of adulation. Should I attempt to do justice to a character so eminently distinguished, my feeble efforts could only be regarded as the grateful effusions of a mind proud of a patronage that can ensure an especial share of public notice and protection.

I have the honour to be, very respectfully,

Sir,

Your most obedient servant,

J. LONG.

London,

February, 1791.

23

LIST OF SUBSCRIBERS

Addis, Mr. George.

Annereau, Mr.

Banks, Sir Joseph, Bart.

Beaufoy, Henry, Esq. M. P.

Berens, Hermanus, Esq.

Berens, Joseph, Esq.

Boddam, Thomas, Esq.

Bettesworth, Thomas, Esq.

Baker, John, Esq.

Baker, William, Esq.

Baker, Miss.

Batson, Robert, Esq.

Baynes, Burdon, Esq.

Blache, J. F. Esq.

Belfour, John, Esq.

Belfour, Mr. Okey. 3 copies.

Belfour, Mr. J. D.

Bird, William, Esq.

Bird, Thomas, Esq.

Bird, Michael, Esq.

Barbe, St. Samuel, Esq.

Barbe, St. John, Esq.

Bingley, —, jun. Esq.

Bates, Mr. John.

Birkley, Mr. John.

Bowden, John, Esq.

Brandon, Mr.

Bull, Mr. J. Bath.

Beilby, Mr. 6 copies.

Croft, the Rev. Herbert.

Cornthwaite, the Rev. Mr.

Chalmers, George, Esq.

Culverden, William, Esq.

Corsellis, Nicholas Cæsar, Esq.

Coussmaker, John, Esq.

Croix, N. D. St., Esq.

Cleaver, Miss.

Cotton, Thomas, Esq.

Cotton, Bayes, Esq.

Chandler, George, Esq.

Coningham, William, Esq.

Cope, Thomas, Esq.

Cleugh, John, Esq.

Clay, Felix, Esq.

Clay, James, Esq.

Clay, William, Esq.

{iv} Clay, George, Esq.

Cooper, Mr.

Cooper, Mr. James.

Corbet, —, Esq. 2 copies.

Dawson, William, Esq.

24Dalrymple, Alexander, Esq.

Dicken, John, Esq.
Earle, James, Esq.
Emes, William, Esq.
Edwards, Charles, Esq.
Etches, R. C., Esq.
Eldridge, Thomas, Esq.
Fraser, Major.
Finch, Thomas, Esq.
Forbes, Thomas, Esq.
Fayle, Benjamin, Esq.
Faden, Mr. William. 6 copies.
Fawler, Mrs.
Forsteen, —, Esq.
Finch, Mr. John.
Fletcher, Mr. James, Oxford.
Grote, George, Esq.
Gould, Thomas, Esq.
George, C. G., Esq.
Goldthwaite, Thomas, Esq.
George, Mr. Edward.
Graft, Mr. James.
Hollingsworth, John, Esq.
Hulse, Richard, Esq.
Hulse, Edward, Esq.
Howison, John, Esq. Lisbon.
Hayward, Francis, Esq. 2 copies.

Holden, Joseph, Esq.

Haffey, John, Esq.

Hill, Edward, Esq.

Hussey, William Wheatley, Esq.

Harper, Mrs.

Hillier, Mr.

Hale, Mr. Harry. 2 copies.

Hill, Mr. John.

Jones, Edward, Esq.

Jeudwine, Thomas, Esq.

Justice, Mr. Richard.

Jacks, Mr.

Knill, John, Esq.

Kensington, Charles, Esq.

Long, Sir James Tylney, Bart. M.P. 7 copies.

{v} Lake, Sir J. Winter, Bart. 4 cop.

Langmore, William, Esq.

Legg, Leaver, Esq.

Long, Mrs.

Locke, Miss.

Locke, John, Esq.

Lion, Thomas, Esq.

Lane, Benjamin, Esq.

Lang, Charles, Esq.

Lightfoot, John, Esq.

25Lonsdale, Mr.

Mulgrave, the Right Hon. Lord.
Monsel, Lieutenant Colonel.
Marsden, William, Esq.
Morris, John, Esq.
Martin, Captain.
Man, Henry, Esq. 6 copies.
Mukins, Francis, Esq.
Malleson, John, Esq.
Murray, Mr. J. 2 copies.
Nesbitt, Lieutenant Colonel.
Nesbitt, Arnold, Esq.
Nasmyth, Maxwell, Esq.
Neave, Richard, Esq.
Prescott, George William, Esq.
Pott, Rev. J. H. Archdeacon of St. Albans.
Pott, Percival, Esq.
Pott, E. H. Esq.
Pott, Mrs.
Powell, Baden, Esq.
Powell, James, Esq.
Powell, Thomas, Esq.
Peck, Jasper, Esq.
Pooley, John, Esq.
Perry, John, Esq.
Palmer, Peregrine, Esq.
Pickwood, Robert, Esq.

Pickering, Thomas, Esq.

Popplewell, Mr.

Roberts, John, Esq.

Rennell, Major.

Robertson, Captain.

Ruspini, J. B., Esq.

Rouse, Benjamin, Esq.

Ross, G. W., Esq. 2 copies.

Rutter, Miss.

Row, William, Esq.

Regail, Alexander, Esq.

Reading Society, Hackney.

Scott, Thomas, Esq. M. P.

{vi} Sneyd, Samuel, Esq.

Symons, the Rev. Mr.

Sheldon, John, Esq. Professor of Anatomy in the Royal Academy of Arts, London, and F. R. S.

Shamier, —, Esq.

Stoe, Harry, Esq.

Sedgwick, Harry, Esq.

Stone, John Hurford, Esq.

Surman, William, Esq.

Smith, Haskett, Esq.

Scafe, Mr. Richard.

Scargill, Mr. James.

Stable, Mr. William.

Smith, Mr. Thomas.

26Smith, Mr. J. Thomas.

Turner, Miss.

Turner, Miss Jane.

Tanner, N. Esq.

Toulmin, William, Esq.

Taylors, Messrs. 6 copies.

Vaston, Mrs.

Vandriel, Mr. J. C.

Wegg, Samuel, Esq.

Winter, John, Esq.

Walker, John, Esq.

Wilson, Stephen, Esq.

Wilson, William, Esq.

Wilcox, William, Esq.

Wilcox, Edward, Esq.

Wilcox, Mrs. Anne.

Wickham, Lieut.

Woolhead, Major, Esq.

Wright, Mr. Thomas.

Watson, Mr. William.

White, Messrs. and Son. 6 copies.

Young, Mrs.

27

PREFACE

The reader will naturally expect some account of this work.

With regard to the historical part, I have endeavoured to explain the situation of the Posts, which, by Mr. Oswald's Treaty, were stipulated to be surrendered to the Americans; and pointed out their convenience to Great Britain in a political and commercial point of view:[11] I have also given a description of the Five and Six Nation Indians; and endeavoured to shew the usefulness, as well as necessity, of a strict alliance with them as long as we retain any possessions in Canada.

With respect to the descriptions of lakes, rivers, &c. which lie beyond Lake Superior, from Lake Nipigon to Lake Arbitibis, I have given them as accurately as possible, either from my own knowledge, or the most authentic Indian accounts; and when it is considered that interpreters in the commercial line seldom have occasion for any geographical knowledge, the want of better information will be excused.

The Vocabulary which is subjoined, and on which I have bestowed some pains, it is hoped will not only afford information to such as may be desirous of attaining a knowledge of the Chippeway language, but prove useful to those who are already engaged in traffic with the Indians.

28{viii} As the mode of spelling a language which has never been reduced to a grammatical system, must be arbitrary, and principally depend on the ear, I have endeavoured to use such letters as best agree with the English pronunciation; avoiding a multiplicity of consonants, which only perplex: and to enable the reader to speak so as to be understood by the natives, it is necessary to observe that a is generally sounded broad; and e final never pronounced but in monosyllables.

The following are the motives which induced me to make the Vocabulary in the Chippeway language so copious.

In the first place it is, strictly speaking, one of the mother tongues of North America, and universally spoken in council by the chiefs who reside about the great lakes, to the westward of the banks of the Mississippi, as far south as the Ohio, and as far north as Hudson's Bay; notwithstanding many of the tribes, within the space of territory I have

described, speak in common a different language.—This observation is confirmed by authors of established repute, and further proved by the concurrent testimony of the Indian interpreters.

Baron de Lahontan[12] asserts that the Algonkin is a mother tongue, and that it is in as much estimation in North America, as Greek and Latin in Europe: this being 29admitted, I am persuaded the Chippeway language possesses as much, if not greater merit, as it is in every respect better understood by the northwest Indians. But as the knowledge of both {ix} may not only be useful, but necessary, I have given a comparative table of about two hundred and sixty words in both tongues, that the reader may use either as he shall find it best understood by the tribes with whom he may have occasion to trade; though he will find, in a variety of instances, a perfect accordance.

The table of words in the Muhhekaneew, or Mohegan, and Shawanee tongues, are extracted from the Rev. Mr. Edwards's publication, and are inserted to shew their analogy with the Chippeway language;[13] and, as he observes that the language of the Delawares in Pennsylvania, of the Penobscots on the borders of Nova Scotia, of the Indians of St. Francis, in Canada, of the Shawanees on the Ohio, and many other tribes of Savages radically agree, I judged the tables of analogy would not be unacceptable.

In the course of the historical part, several speeches in the Chippeway language are introduced: and at the end of the Vocabulary, a number of familiar phrases, which not only serve to shew the mode of speech, but give a better idea of the language than single words.

The numeral payshik, or one, is frequently used to express the articles a and the; and woke is the general word for the plural number, though not always used.

30Mr. Carver's Vocabulary will, in many instances, be found to differ from the Chippeway;[14] but when it is considered that though he calls it the Chippeway Vocabulary, in p. 414 of his work, he says "The Chippeway, or Algonkin," which {x} evidently proves that he believes them the same language:—but with regard to the usefulness of the tongue, there is a perfect corroboration of sentiment; for he remarks that the Chippeway tongue appears to be the most prevailing of all the Indian languages.

It may not be amiss to observe, that the Chippeway tongue, as spoken by the servants of the Hudson's Bay Company, is somewhat different, though not essentially so, and is called by them the Home-Guard Language.

With regard to the Iroquois, or Mohawk tongue, which is peculiar to the Five and Six Nation Indians, it is not necessary in the fur-trade beyond Michillimakinac; and if it were, there are not wanting printed authorities sufficient to instruct:—this consideration has induced me to give only the numerals, and a few words in the language.

I have not any thing further to add, but a sincere wish that my labours may prove useful to the world; and that whatever defects may be found in the following work, the Public will look on them with candour; and will recollect that they are perusing, not the pages of a professed Tourist, but such observations as a commercial man flatters himself may be found acceptable to the merchant and the philosopher.

32_SKETCH of the_ WESTERN COUNTRIES of CANADA 1791

33

VOYAGES AND TRAVELS

Having engaged myself, at an early period of life, to go to North America, in the quality of an articled clerk, I left Gravesend on the 10th of April, 1768, on board the “Canada,” captain Smith, bound to Quebec and Montreal. We had a pleasant voyage, till we reached the coast of America, when the weather proving unfavourable, we were obliged to put into Newfoundland, where we stayed fourteen days. Nothing remarkable occurred here, except that a party went on shore to hunt, and one of them, Mr. Jordan, who was a passenger, bound to Montreal, finding himself much fatigued, remained in the woods; the rest returned on board in the evening, anxiously expecting their companion; but after four days painful solicitude, not being able to obtain any intelligence of him, we gave up all hopes of seeing him again; and as the snow was deep on the ground, and the wild animals numerous, we supposed him to be either frozen to death, or devoured by the beasts. Just as the captain proposed setting sail, an Indian came on board, to whom we endeavoured to communicate our distress. On this occasion, he seemed to understand us, and made signs of his intention to go in search of him; and being furnished with some rum by way of

encouragement, he got into his canoe and paddled [2] ashore. The captain, with great humanity, deferred prosecuting the voyage for some time: but the Indian not returning, we left Newfoundland, and after a tedious passage of near eleven weeks, arrived at Quebec, the capital of Canada.

34When the Spaniards (who first discovered this northern clime) sailed past Cape Rosiers at the entrance of the River St. Laurence, the mountains, now called the Mountains of Notre Dame, were covered with snow. Such a prospect, in the summer season, gave them a very unfavourable opinion of the country, and they were deterred from going up the river, supposing the land to be too barren to recompence their labours at present, or afford any future advantages; and the same impressions induced them to call it Capo di Nada, or Cape Nothing, by which name it is described in their charts, and from whence, by corruption of language, it has derived its present name of Canada.[15]

The River St. Laurence takes its rise from Lake Nipissin, northeast of Lake Superior, about the distance of 2000 miles from Quebec.[16] The breadth of it is 90 miles at the entrance, and it is navigable near 500 miles from the sea.

The Isle of Orleans, which is but a small distance from the city, is a beautiful spot of ground, about 20 miles in length, and six in breadth. The fertility of the soil makes it a useful and valuable garden, insomuch that it supplies the capital with vegetables and grain in great abundance. The opposite village of Beauport also charms the eye, and very much heightens the scene, which is rich, romantic, and magnificent.

[3] The Fall of Montmorenci particularly attracted my notice, as it is perhaps the most pleasing natural cascade in the world; and though its height and width are not to be compared in point of awful grandeur with the stupendous cataract of Niagara, it is sufficiently wonderful to shew the power of the great Architect of the Universe; and its effects are more pleasing than the latter; for while it produces wonder and pleasure in the highest degree, it does not strike the beholder with such tremendous ideas.

As our ship was bound to Montreal, as well as Quebec, and I was under the captain's care and direction, he did not allow me to go on shore at the latter place; but in a few days, to my great joy, we arrived safe at Montreal, the place of our last destination.

Montreal, formerly called Ville Marie, has nothing remarkable in it at present; it was formerly famous for a great fair, which lasted near three months, and was resorted to by the Indians, who came from the distance of many hundreds of miles, to barter their peltry for English goods. It will give pleasure to the reader to be informed, that we received here the agreeable intelligence that Mr. Jordan was found in the woods, two days after our departure from Newfoundland, though with the loss of his feet, occasioned by the severity of the weather: he went afterwards in a vessel to Trois Rivières, where he settled in an iron foundry.

Trois Rivières,[17] is so called from the junction of three currents which empty themselves into the River St. Laurence. About a league from the town there is an iron foundry, which was erected by private [4] persons in the year 1737, and afterwards ceded to the King. At first 36 cannon and mortars were cast there, but it is now principally used in the manufacture of stoves and kettles. The ore is taken at a small distance from the works. A river runs down from the foundry into the River St. Laurence, which enables the proprietors to send their manufactures round the country in boats upon very moderate terms.

This town, which is half way between Quebec and Montreal, had formerly a very considerable trade in peltry, and was the second mart in Canada; but in process of time the inhabitants of Montreal contrived to draw almost all the fur-trade to themselves; and though the residents in Trois Rivières live by their commerce with the savages, and the manufacturing of birch canoes, yet the town has lost that rank and consequence which it formerly maintained; nevertheless, the advantage of the iron foundry makes them some amends, and they live, upon the whole, as happy as any people in Canada. The inhabitants of Trois Rivières were formerly very much incommoded with fleas, which swarmed in great quantities, and which, Baron de Lahontan humorously observes, occasioned an inconvenient quickness in conversation.

On my arrival at Montreal, I was placed under the care of a very respectable merchant to learn the Indian trade, which is the chief support of the town. I soon acquired the names of

every article of commerce in the Iroquois and French languages, and being at once prepossessed in favour of the savages, improved daily in their tongue, to the satisfaction of my employer, who approving my assiduity, and wishing me to be completely qualified in the Mohawk language to enable me to traffic with the Indians in his absence, sent me to a village called [5] Cahnuağa, or 37Cocknawaga, situated about nine miles from Montreal, on the south side of the River St. Laurence,[18] where I lived with a chief whose name was Assenegethter, until I was sufficiently instructed in the language, and then returned to my master's store, to improve myself in French, which is not only universally spoken in Canada, but is absolutely necessary in the commercial intercourse with the natives, and without which it would be impossible to enjoy the society of the most respectable families, who are in general ignorant of the English language.

38[6] A Description of the Village and Inhabitants of Cahnuağa, or Cocknawaga, who some years since separated from the Mohawks.

The Savages of this nation, who are called the praying Indians, from the circumstance of their chiefs wearing crucifixes, and going through the streets of Montreal with their beads, begging alms, separated long since from the Mohawk and River Indians, and for a considerable time after their separation, carried on an illicit trade between Albany and Montreal. The village contains about two hundred houses, which, though they are chiefly built of stone, have a mean and dirty appearance. The inhabitants amount to about eight hundred, and (what is contrary to the general observation on the population of the Indians) are continually increasing. It is considered as the most respectable of all the Indian villages, and the people are in a great degree civilized and industrious. They sow corn, and do not depend like other nations solely upon hunting for support; but at the same time, they are not fond of laborious work, conceiving it only suited to those who are less free, and retaining so much of their primeval valour and independence as to annex the idea of slavery to every domestic employment. Their hunting grounds are within the United States, at a considerable distance from the village, round Fort George, Ticonderoga, and Crown Point, where they kill beaver and deer, but not in such great abundance at present as they did formerly, the country being better inhabited, 39and the wild animals, from the present state of population, being obliged to seek a more distant [7] and secure retreat. The skins they obtain are generally brought down to Montreal, and either sold for money, or bartered for goods. It is not improbable, that in a few years there will not be many good hunters among them, as they are extravagantly fond of dress, and that too of the most expensive kind. Their fondness for this luxury, which the profits arising from the lands they let out to the Canadians enables them to indulge, contributes to make them more idle; and in

proportion as their vanity increases, ease and indolence are the more eagerly courted and gratified, insomuch that hunting is in danger of being totally abandoned. Their religion is Catholic, and they have a French priest, or, as the Chippeway Indians term it, "The Master of Life's Man," who instructs them, and performs divine service in the Iroquois tongue. Their devotion impressed my mind too powerfully to suffer it to pass unnoticed, and induces me to observe that great praise is due to their pastors, who by unwearied assiduity, and their own exemplary lives and conversation, have converted a savage race of beings from Heathenism to Christianity, and by uniformity of conduct, continue to preserve both their religion and themselves in the esteem of their converts: An example worthy of imitation, and amounting to an incontrovertible proof that nature, in her most degenerate state, may be reclaimed by those who are sincere in their endeavours, gentle in their manners, and consistent in the general tenor of their behaviour. And it is to be expected, and certainly most ardently to be wished, that the savage temper among them may in time be more effectually subdued, their natural impetuosity softened and restrained, 40and their minds weaned from their unhappy attachment to the use of strong liquors; their indulgence in which is frequently attended with the most melancholy and fatal consequences.

41[8] Of the Indians of the Five and Six Nations.

I shall now give a particular account of the Indians of the Five and Six Nations, and the reasons why they are so called, in order to enable the reader to form an idea of their consequence in a political point of view, as well as their importance on account of the fur-trade; because the vicinity of the American territories from Georgia to New England, gives the United States a great command and influence from their situation, and renders them more to be dreaded than even the French were in the zenith of their American power, when it was universally known they had such an interest among the savages, as induced them to call the French their fathers, and of which so much yet remains, as to prompt them to retain a predilection in favour of the traders of the Gallic race who are settled among them.

In 1603, when the French settled in Canada, part of the Five Nations resided on the island of Montreal, and were at war with the Adirondacks (who lived on the Uttawa, or grand river leading to Michillimakinac);[19] these, considered the Five Nations as very insignificant opponents, and incapable of serious revenge, and they were held in as much derision as the Delawares, who were usually called old women, or the Shawanees (who lived on the Wabach River), who were obliged to wear petticoats for a considerable time, in contempt of their want of courage, and as a badge of their pusillanimity and 42degradation. But as no

people can bear the imputation of cowardice or effeminacy as a [9] national character, the chiefs determined to rouse their young men, and stimulate them to retrieve, or establish, a reputation; and inspiring them with heroic notions, led them to war against the Satanas, or Shaounons, whom they subdued with great ease. This success revived their drooping spirits, and forgetting how often they had been defeated by the Adirondacks, [they] commenced hostilities against them; and availing themselves of the mean opinion their enemies entertained of their valour, gained the victory in several actions: and at last carried on a successful war against them even in their own country, obliging their former conquerors to abandon their native land, and seek refuge on the spot where Quebec is now situated.

Soon after the French arrived and had settled at Quebec, they formed an alliance with the Adirondacks against the Five Nations. The first engagement proved decisive in favour of the Adirondacks, owing entirely to the use of fire arms having been introduced among them by their new allies, which the Indians of the Five Nations had never before seen. This alliance, and the consequent defeat was far from subduing or disheartening the Five Nations, but rather seemed to inspire them with additional ardour, and what they were deficient in military skill and suitable weapons, they supplied by stratagem and courage. Although the French gained several advantages over them in the course of more than fifteen years, they at length were glad to bring the contest to a conclusion, by making a peace with them.

This shews that the Savages of the Five Nations are not easily to be conquered, and proves the necessity of preserving them in our interest, [10] as long as we shall deem it expedient, from policy, to keep possession of Canada. This being admitted, it is certain that no method will more effectually conduce to that end, than retaining such barriers in our hands as will enable us to afford them protection, and supply them with arms and ammunition, and other necessaries, in time of danger.

The Indians who lie to the north of Philadelphia, between the provinces of Pennsylvania and the Lakes, consist of three distinct leagues, of which the Senekas, Mohawks, and Onondagoes, who are called the fathers, compose the first; the Oneidoes, Cayugas, Tuscororas, Conoys and Nanticokes, which are one tribe, compose the second, and these two leagues constitute what is called the Six Nations. The third league is formed of the Wanamis, Chihokockis, or Delawares, the Mawhiccons, Munseys, and Wapingers, to which

may be added the Mingoes. The Cowetas, or Creek Indians, are also united in friendship with them.[20]

Mr. Colden says, the nations who are joined together by a league or confederacy, like the United Provinces of Holland, are known by the names of Mohawks, Oneydoes, Onondagoes, Cayugas, and Senekas; that each of these nations is again divided into three tribes or families, who are distinguished by the names of the Tortoise, Bear, and Wolf; and that the Tuscororas, after the war ⁴⁴they had with the people of Carolina, fled to the Five Nations, and incorporated with them, so that in fact they now consist of six, although they still retain the name of the Five Nations.[21] This union is of such long duration as to leave little or no traces of its origin.

[11] Baron Lahontan observes, that the Iroquois are in reality but one nation, divided into five districts; and which he distinguishes in the following manner:—The Tsonontouans, the Goyogans, the Onontagues, the Oneyouts, and the Agnies, who were all settled about thirty leagues from each other, near the great Lake Frontenac, now called Ontario.

The Mohawks, or Maquas, are the most warlike among the Five Nations, and consist of near seven hundred warriors. They are called by the French, Agnies, or Annies, and were originally settled on the French or grand River, leading to Michillimakinac, from whence they afterwards removed to the Mohawk River, near Schenectady, about sixteen miles from Albany, in the state of New York. Since the war in 1757 they have separated, and part of the nation is settled on the grand river, near Niagara, and the rest at the back of the bay of Quenty, or Kenty, about forty-eight miles above Cataraqui, the capital of the Loyalist settlements on the River St. Laurence.[22]

⁴⁵Cataraqui, or Fort Frontenac, is built near to the place where Lake Ontario discharges itself into the River St. Laurence. It was erected by Le Comte de Frontenac, governor general of Canada, to stop the incursions of the Iroquois, and divert the channel of the commerce in peltry, which that people carried on with the inhabitants of New York, and which they bartered for with the Savages by merchandize, at a cheaper rate than the French could supply them.

This fort was at first built of wood and turf, and surrounded with high pickets, but during the mission of Father Hennepin, it was faced [12] with stone, by the direction of the Sieur Cavelier de la Salle, and enlarged to a circuit of more than seven hundred yards. The bason in which it stands is capable of holding a number of vessels of considerable burthen. There is a small garrison at present, and a commanding officer, to examine all boats which pass either to the new settlements or the upper posts.[23]

The Oneidoes, or Oneyouts, the Onondagoes, Cayugas, Senekas, or Tsonontouans, and the Tuscororas, who live with the Oneidoes and Onondagoes, are settled about thirty leagues distant from each other, and none of them exceeding two hundred and fifty miles from the Mohawk River. All these nations express peace by the metaphor of a tree, whose top they say will reach the sun, and whose branches extend far abroad, not only that they may be 46seen at a great distance, but to afford them shelter and repose.

The Five Nations claim all the country south of the River St. Laurence to the Ohio, and down the Ohio to the Wabache, which lies to the westward of the state of Pennsylvania, near to the borders of Virginia; westerly, to the Lakes Ontario and Erie, and the River Miamis, and the eastern boundaries of Lake Champlain, and the United States.

The firmness of this league, the great extent of land it claims, the number of great warriors it produces, and the undaunted courage and skill which distinguish the members of it in their contests both with the Savages and European nations, all conspire to prove the good policy of an alliance with them; as it is an undoubted fact, that in case of a dispute with the Americans, the posts would make but a feeble resistance [13] without their exertions; and deprived of the forts, the fur-trade would soon be lost to this country.

I shall next consider the situation and utility of these barriers, in a commercial point of view, and endeavour to shew the propriety of keeping possession of the posts, notwithstanding by the treaty of peace with the United States, they were expressly stipulated to be given up; although it is not probable indeed that the Americans will be able to fulfil the treaty on their part, so as to entitle them to make a reasonable demand—I mean such a claim as government must absolutely admit.

The first post I shall notice is Oswegatche, on the River St. Laurence, about one hundred and fifty miles above Montreal, at the mouth of the Black River, where there are about an hundred Savages, who occasionally frequent it, and are called Oswegatche Indians, although they belong to the tribes of the Five Nations.[24] To this fort the inhabitants of New England may with ease transport goods, to supply the Mohawks, Cahnauagas, Connecedagas, St. Regis, and some straggling Messesawger Indians, who live near the Détroit,[25] at a smaller expence than they can possibly be obtained from the merchants at Quebec or Montreal, but particularly Rum, which is now become an essential requisite in every transaction with the Savages; for though they used formerly often to complain of the introduction of strong water by the traders (as appears by the language of their chiefs in council) to the prejudice of their young men, yet they have not now the resolution to refrain from the use of it;—on the contrary, it is become so familiar, and even necessary to them, that a drunken frolic is [14] looked upon as an indispensable requisite in a barter, and anticipated with extreme delight.

Carlton Island is higher up the river, and has greater conveniences annexed to it than Oswegatche, having an excellent harbour, with a strong fortification well garrisoned.[26] It affords excellent accommodation for shipping, and may be considered as the naval storehouse for supplying Niagara and the other posts. There are vessels of considerable bulk continually sailing from thence to Niagara, Oswego, &c.—There is also a commodore of the Lakes, whose residence is on the island.

Fort Oswego, on Lake Ontario, formerly called Lake Frontenac, is a good fortification, and capable of containing six hundred men. This post is particularly important, as it is the key to the United States, and commands the opening to the North, or Hudson's River, protecting the trade with the Indians who live on the banks of the River St. Laurence, and the whole extent of the great sheet of water near which it stands, reckoned about eighty leagues in length, and in some places from twenty-five to thirty broad.[27]

When the English were in possession of the Colonies, Albany commanded the trade with the Indians; and it is well known that no place in America furnished such a quantity of furs and skins, not even the Hudson's Bay settlements, whose utmost extent of trade is far inferior to the produce collected here. These furs and skins were procured from Canada, and brought to Fort Oswego by the Indians, who disposed of them to the agents sent there by the merchants of Albany. [15] Besides, Indian goods may be conveyed from Albany to

Fort Oswego at a cheaper rate than from Montreal to the new settlements at Cataraqui and the head of the Bay of Kenty, and at less risk, because the stream of the Mohawk River is not so strong as that of the Cataraqui River, between the Lake and Montreal, and there are not so many falls of water.

Fort Niagara is on the same lake, where there is also a good garrison.[28] This lake takes its rise from Lake Erie, and after a course of fifteen leagues, empties itself into Lake Ontario. About four leagues before it enters the lake, it is intercepted by the great fall which is mentioned by various authors, who do not agree in opinion respecting its height; but from the most authentic accounts, 50joined to my own observations, I am inclined to coincide with the judgment of captain Pierie, who made an actual survey, and describes the height to be one hundred and forty-six feet, and the width one thousand and forty, which proves that the accounts of Father Hennepin and La Salle were erroneous, who both agree in calling the perpendicular height six hundred feet. The distance from Fort Niagara to Fort Stanwix[29] is about two hundred and eighty miles, through the Jenesee country, which I travelled with great ease in about eight days. This post therefore is of the most essential importance to protect the Indians who are in alliance with Great Britain, and to secure the valuable and undivided advantage of their trade.

The Détroit is so called from being a strait between Lake Erie, and Lake Huron, and commands the trade from the Ohio, Illinois, Mississippi, and the Upper Lakes, which post is resorted to by the Uttawas, [16] Hurons, Miamis, Ohio, Mississippi, Delaware, and Tuscorora Indians, besides the Messesawgas.[30]

These five posts are situated at the back of the three states of New England, New York, and Pennsylvania, and at a very small distance from the Loyalist settlements.

51The last post is Michillimakinac, which is situated between Lake Huron and Lake Michigan, upon an isthmus, about one hundred and thirty leagues long, and twenty-two wide, and is the last fortress towards the northwest. This point of land is on the north of the straits through which the Lake of the Illinois, or Michigan, three hundred leagues in circumference, empties into Lake Huron, which is of equal extent. The strait is about three leagues long, and one broad, and half a league distant from the mouth of the Illinois.[31]

This is perhaps the most material of all the barriers, and of the greatest importance to the commercial interest of this country, as it intercepts all the trade of the Indians of the upper country from Hudson's Bay to Lake Superior, and affords protection to various tribes of Savages, who constantly resort to it to receive presents from the commanding officer, and from whence the traders, who go to the northwest, take their departure for the grand portage, or grand carrying place, which is nine miles in length, before they enter on the waters communicating with the northwest.[32]

52Were the English to remain in possession of every part of Canada, except the posts, numberless doors would be left open for the Americans [17] to smuggle in their goods, and in process of time the illicit trade would supersede the necessity of the exportation of British goods from England to Canada, and the commercial benefits arising from the consumption of our manufactures would be entirely lost.—In that case, Canada would be of little service to England in a commercial point of view: How far it is worth the expence of retaining, politically considered, is not for me to discuss.[33]

53[18] Indian Scouts, and Manner of Scalping.

Having endeavoured to explain the nature and importance of the Five and Six Nation Indians, and described the situation of the posts, and the probable consequences of complying with the treaty, I shall return to my situation at Montreal.

Having stayed with my employer seven years, and not being willing to enter into a new agreement, I determined to pursue the bent of my inclinations; and being naturally of a roving disposition, which was increased by my frequent associations with the Savages, I entered a volunteer at the head of a party of Indians, thinking that my country might at some future period derive advantage from my more intimate knowledge of the country and its language.

My entrée was in 1775, when a party of about thirty of the Americans, commanded by the famous Ethan Allen, appeared at Long Point, about two miles from Montreal, intending to plunder the town; they were however disappointed in their expectations by the good conduct of captain Crawford of the twenty-sixth regiment, who with about forty regulars and some volunteers sallied out and made the enemy retreat to a barn, where an engagement took place, in which major Carden, Mr. Paterson, a volunteer, and three

privates were killed, and I was wounded in the foot; but on the arrival of a field piece, the enemy surrendered.[34]

[19] Being beloved by the Indians, and preferring active service with them to any other mode of life, I accompanied 54lieutenant Peter Johnson and lieutenant Walter Butler, with a few Mohawks, to attack the Americans at Isle au Noix, whom we defeated, taking a great many prisoners. During the engagement we lost two volunteers and three privates. In this action I received a wound in the head from the butt-end of a musket.[35]

I then joined the eighth regiment of foot, commanded by captain Foster, to attack the Americans at the Cedars, whom we also defeated. The prisoners were left at Fort St. Vielle, or Prison Island, at the foot of the Falls, under a proper guard; and the remains of our small army, consisting of about one hundred and fifty men, went down to La Chine to engage another body of Americans; but finding them too strongly entrenched, we retreated to Point Clair, where we stayed till we received intelligence that general Arnold, with four thousand men were at Isle au Noix, and that major Gordon was killed in his way to St. John's, about two miles from the fort.[36] 55On this occasion it may not be amiss to observe, that the custom adopted by the Americans, and with so much success, of levelling their pieces at the officers, originated with the Indians, who are possessed with an idea that the men will naturally be thrown into confusion when their leaders are dead. This however is not without exceptions: the Mattaugwessawacks, whose country lies westward of Lake Superior, hold the persons of officers sacred; and Josepsis, one of their tribe, who was taken prisoner, and sold to the Penobscot Indians, says that the Savages they were at war with have adopted the same method.

[20] I was immediately ordered on a scout, at the head of ten Connecedaga or Rondaxe Indians, with captain La Motte, a Canadian gentleman,[37] in search of the person who had killed major Gordon, and to reconnoitre the woods, in hopes of gaining information of the real force of the Americans at Isle au Noix. To avoid suspicion, we were all dressed like Savages; and as captain La Motte and myself were well acquainted with the Iroquois language, it was impossible to distinguish us from the natives. We were out six days and nights, with very 56little provision, living chiefly on the scrapings of the inner bark of trees and wild roots, particularly onions, which grow in great abundance, and are not disagreeable to the palate. Hunger reconciles us to every thing that will support nature, and makes the most indifferent food acceptable. From my own woful experience I can assert,

that what at any other time would have been unpleasant and even nauseous, under the pressure of hunger is not only greedily eaten, but relished as a luxury. Those who are acquainted with the nature of roving in the woods in time of war, know the necessity of travelling light, and particularly on an Indian scout, as the Savages seldom take any thing but a small quantity of Indian corn and Maple sugar, which, after beating the corn between two stones, they mix with water, and on this they subsist. During this expedition, as the business was urgent, and the enemy near at hand, we depended on adventitious food.

On the last day's march, returning without being able to obtain any intelligence, one of the Indians heard a noise resembling the breaking of a stick; the chief of the band sent out a scout, who soon returned with a prisoner. The man appeared much frightened, imagining himself in the hands of Savages only. Having bound him to a tree, I [21] being the only one of the party who understood English, questioned him very closely respecting the situation and force of the enemy, and interpreted the conversation. When he heard me talk his own language he was agreeably surprised, and his fears in some degree giving way to hope, he begged me to save him from the fury of the Indians, whose general conduct in war had filled his mind with the most dreadful apprehensions. I assured him, that if he would faithfully satisfy all my inquiries, his life should be spared. He cheerfully complied with the requisition, and directed me to a place from whence we might have a clear view of the Americans, who were encamped on the opposite shore.

Having left him bound, we proceeded about two miles through swamps, till we came in sight of the enemy. The Indians immediately panted for action, but captain La Motte thought it prudent to restrain their ardour, and ordered them to retreat into the woods, still keeping our object in view. Soon after, a boat full of men crossed the river, and landed without perceiving us. The Indians instantly kindled a fire, and each man filled his blanket with rotten wood and leaves, till it was extended to the size of a man; then placing them near the fire, to appear like Indians asleep, they retired to a small distance, to give the Americans an opportunity of coming up unmolested, not doubting but they would immediately fire at the blankets. The manoeuvre succeeded to our expectation; for the Americans discovering the smoke advanced towards the fire, and perceiving the blankets, discharged their muskets. The Savages immediately rushed from their ambush, and setting up the war-hoop, fell upon the enemy, scalped seven of them, and took five prisoners, whom we painted like ourselves. We then returned, released the prisoner from the tree, and conducted them all to St. John's, [22] where they were examined by colonel England, who ordered me to take them to Sir Guy Carleton without delay.

Having executed this commission to the satisfaction of the commander in chief, I remained some time with my old friends, till I received a message from Sir Guy Carleton to attend him; when he ordered me to join brigadier general Nesbit, with the twenty-ninth and forty-seventh 58regiments; in the latter of which I served as a volunteer a considerable time; but finding no vacancy, and having no allowance for my services, to enable me to live and appear as I wished, I quitted the regiment to enjoy my favourite Indian life; and as I knew their manner of living, and could accommodate myself to their diet, I thought I might probably continue serviceable to my country in scouting parties, and accordingly accompanied a party of Savages to the Lake of the two Mountains, fifteen leagues above Montreal, a village belonging to the Connecedagas, carrying a scalp as a trophy of my services.[38]

Scalping is a mode of torture peculiar to the Indians. If a blow is given with the tomahawk previous to the scalp being taken off, it is followed by instant death; but where scalping only is inflicted, it puts the person to excruciating pain, though death does not always ensue. There are instances of persons of both sexes, now living in America, and no doubt in other countries, who, after having been scalped, by wearing a plate of silver or tin 59on the crown of the head, to keep it from cold, enjoy a good state of health, and are seldom afflicted with pains.

When an Indian strikes a person on the temple with a tomahawk, the victim instantly drops; he then seizes his hair with one hand, [23] twisting it very tight together, to separate the skin from the head, and placing his knee on the breast, with the other he draws the scalping knife from the sheath, and cuts the skin round the forehead, pulling it off with his teeth. As he is very dexterous, the operation is generally performed in two minutes. The scalp is then extended on three hoops, dried in the sun, and rubbed over with vermilion. Some of the Indians in time of war, when scalps are well paid for, divide one into five or six parts, and carry them to the nearest post, in hopes of receiving a reward proportionate to the number.

When the scalp is taken from the head of one of their own people, they frequently make the dead body of advantage to them, by dressing it up and painting it with vermilion; they then place it against a tree, with weapons in its hand, to induce the Indians to suppose it an enemy on the watch; and round the body they set spears in the ground, so as scarcely to be discernible. The Indians, on seeing the person against the tree, and anxious to make him a

prisoner, in the eagerness of running fall on the points of the spears, and being disabled from proceeding, are easily made prisoners.

Before I close this subject I shall relate an anecdote of two Savages of different nations, in the time of Sir William Johnson.

A Mohawk, of the name of Scunnionsa, or The Elk, and a Chippeway Indian of the name of Cark Cark, or the crow, having met at a council of war near Crown Point, 60in the year 1757, were extolling their own merits, and boasting of their superiority in taking scalps. The Mohawk contended that he could take a larger scalp than the Chippeway warrior; [24] who was very highly offended, and desired that the experiment might be made. They parted, each pursuing a different route, after having first agreed to meet at a certain place, on a particular day, when a council was to be held. At the time appointed they returned, and appeared at the council. The Mohawk laid down his scalp, which was the skin of the head and neck of a man stuffed with fine moss, and sewed up with deers' sinews, and the eyes fastened in. The chiefs expressed their approbation, and pronounced him to be a great and brave warrior. The Chippeway then rose, and looking earnestly at the Mohawk, desired the interpreter to tell him that it was an old woman's scalp, which is considered as a term of great reproach, and called to one of his sons to bring forward his scalp; when instantly he exhibited to their view the complete skin of a man, stuffed with down feathers, and sewed very close with deers' sinews. The chiefs loaded him with praise, and unanimously acknowledged his superiority. The Mohawk warrior, fired with resentment, withdrew from the council meditating revenge; and as soon as he saw the Chippeway come forth, he followed him, and watching a convenient opportunity, dispatched him with his tomahawk, rejoicing that he had, even in this dastardly manner, got rid of a victorious rival.

61[25] Some Account of the Character and Disposition of the Connecedaga, or Rondaxe Indians; with Remarks on the Iroquois and Cherokee Nations.

The Savages of this nation are of the Chippeway tribe, and speak a mixture of the Iroquois and Chippeway tongues: they were driven from the upper country at the time of the great Indian war, about the year 1720, and settled on the Lake of the two Mountains. There are about two hundred inhabitants, who are very industrious, and cultivate the land in the manner of the Cahnuagas; they also breed cattle, and live in a degree of civilization unknown to most of the Chippeway tribes. There is also a town near Lake Erie, in the limits

of the United States, which is inhabited by about fifteen hundred of this nation, of whom the Reverend Mr. Charles Beattie gives a very favourable account.

Since the settlement of the Connecedagas they have intermarried with the Cahnuaga, St. Regis, and Mohawk Indians, which is the reason why their language is less pure, though some of them speak the original tongue, which in my frequent communications with the Chippeways beyond Michillimakinac, I found in every respect perfectly understood. It was among these Indians that I first acquired the rudiments of a language which, from long habit, is become more familiar to me than my own; and I hope I shall not be accused of vanity, in asserting that the vocabulary and familiar phrases, subjoined to this [26] work, are more copious than will be found in any former publication. In spelling them I have been particularly careful in using such letters and accents as best express the Indian words, according to our pronunciation. To lay down general rules for the orthography ⁶²of a language which has never been reduced to a system, I do not pretend: my endeavours may perhaps assist those who are better informed in the principles of universal grammar.

The Connecedagas are esteemed brave warriors; and my opinion, founded on long experience of their conduct and bravery, coincides with that which the English, from report only, entertain of them. No nation of Savages were ever more true to the British interest, not even the Mohawks, whose fidelity is become almost proverbial. During the continuance of the American war, they neglected their families and domestic concerns to fight for the English, which the Cahnuagas (though descendants of the Mohawks and Munseys, or Mawhiccon Indians, commonly called River Indians) did not with so much cheerfulness; perhaps the relationship of the latter to the Delawares before their defection, whom the Indians by way of derision used to call old women, might occasion this temporary reluctance; but if that was the cause, it was but of very short duration; for to do them justice, when they took up the tomahawk they behaved with great intrepidity, and proved that the blood of the ancient Mohawks still ran in their veins. Some have, though I think without much candour, imputed their services to the fear of our government, and the resentment of the Savages in our interest on the one hand, and the hopes of considerable rewards on the other; but as such reflections may be far from the truth, it cannot answer any purpose to comment severely on their conduct: [27] it is sufficient to know they were our allies, and in all probability will continue friendly to the British nation. Great praise is due on this account to major Carlton, a brave and experienced officer, whom they loved with a Roman friendship; ⁶³they flew to his standard with alacrity, obeyed him with

cheerfulness, and never deserted him: no instance of friendship or attachment, either ancient or modern, could surpass it.

It requires good natural sense, and a thorough knowledge of the dispositions of the Indians, to persuade them to place unlimited confidence in their European or American leaders; to which must always be added, a seeming approbation of their advice, and an endeavour to conform to their wishes, never obstinately pursuing a design either offensive or defensive, contrary to their opinion. How fatal a different line of conduct may prove, the destruction of general Braddock is a melancholy instance: by his haughty demeanour, and strict adherence to his own plan, in direct opposition to the counsel of experienced chiefs, he lost their friendship, and died unlamented, confirming them in an opinion they had before often hinted, "that he wanted both skill and prudence in war." Even the great Washington incurred their censure by his conduct, and gave occasion to an Indian chief, of the name of Thanachrishon, of the Seneka tribes, judging him by their own rules, to say, "that he was a good natured man, but had no experience."

An impartial mind will require but little to be persuaded that the Indians are superior to us in the woods: it is their natural element (if I may be allowed the expression), and a tree or river, of which their [28] recollection never fails, guide them to the secret recesses of a deep wood, either for safety, or the purpose of ambush. As they pay little attention to the rising or setting sun, it at first surprised me, by what method they traveled from place to place, without any material aberration; but this they soon explained, by assuring me, that they had not the least 64difficulty in going from one spot to another, being governed by the moss on the trees, which always remains on the north side, but on the south it wastes and decays: they remark also, that the branches are larger, and the leaves more luxuriant on the south than on the north side of the tree. The most enlightened part of mankind, I am persuaded, cannot be more exact in their mode of judging, nor more attentive to the works of nature.

To prove further, if there are any who doubt it, that the Indians possess strong natural abilities, and are even capable of receiving improvement from the pursuits of learning, I shall relate a story from Kalm's Travels.[39]

“An old American Savage being at an inn at New York, met with a gentleman who gave him some liquor, and being rather lively, boasted he could read and write English. The gentleman, willing to indulge him in displaying his knowledge, begged leave to propose a question, to which the old man consented. He was then asked, who was the first circumcised? the Indian immediately replied, father Abraham:—and directly asked the gentleman, who was the first quaker? He said it was very uncertain, that people differed in their sentiments exceedingly. The Indian perceiving the gentleman unable to resolve the question, put his fingers into his mouth, to express his surprize, and looking [29] stedfastly, told him, that Mordecai was the first quaker, for he would not pull off his hat to Haman.”

Mr. Adair[40] says, the Cherokees are very apt at giving 65people nicknames. A dull stalking fellow, they call a turkey buzzard; an ill tempered man, a wasp; a talkative person, a grasshopper; a hoarse voice, they say resembles a bull; and an interpreter whose manners and conversation are obscene, they call a smock interpreter.

The disposition of the Indians is naturally proud and self-sufficient: they think themselves the wisest of the sons of men, and are extremely offended when their advice is rejected. The feats of valour of their ancestors, continually repeated and impressed upon their minds, inspire them with the most exalted notions of their own prowess and bravery; hence arises the firmest reliance on their own courage and power; and though but a handful of men, comparatively speaking, they are vain enough to think they can overthrow both French and English whenever they please. They say, the latter are fools, for they hold their guns half man high, and let them snap; but that they themselves take sight, and seldom fail of doing execution, which, they add, is the true intention of going to war.

These exalted notions of self-consequence are more peculiar to the Five Nations, and for which they are more eminently distinguished than other tribes of Savages, although none of them are deficient in this respect. Such sentiments as these have made the Iroquois dreaded and revered by others, for their superior understanding and valour, and likewise has a tendency to increase their fame. Although they [30] decrease in numbers daily, the thirst of glory will never be extinguished among them, whilst there is a breast to nourish it: they will never shrink from danger when honour is at stake.

The Iroquois laugh when you talk to them of obedience to kings; for they cannot reconcile the idea of submission with the dignity of man. Each individual is a sovereign⁶⁶ in his own mind; and as he conceives he derives his freedom from the great Spirit alone, he cannot be induced to acknowledge any other power.

They are extremely jealous, and easily offended, and when they have been once induced to suspect, it is very difficult to remove the impression. They carry their resentments with them to the grave, and bequeath them to the rising generation.

Those who have associated with them, though they may admire their heroism in war, their resolution in supporting the most excruciating tortures, and the stability of their friendships, cannot but lament the dreadful effects of their displeasure, which has no bounds. It is this violence of temper, which is generally in the extreme, that makes them so difficult to subdue, and so dangerous to encourage; too much indulgence they attribute to fear, and too much severity brings on resentment.

To remove these strong prejudices (which, however prone human nature may be to encourage them, would never prove so prejudicial to society, unless continually promoted by the advice and example of the aged), has been the constant endeavour of those nations who have been [31] in alliance with them, and some attempts have been made to soften their manners by the introduction of the Christian religion, whose precepts are so wonderfully calculated to destroy every blood-thirsty sentiment, and make mankind happier in themselves, and better members of the community. In this laudable pursuit our neighbours the French have been most successful, at least so far as an alteration in external behaviour may be considered as an indication of the amendment of the heart. The good conduct of the inhabitants of several Indian villages in Canada bears testimony to this observation.⁶⁷ Nevertheless, in contradiction to this remark, Mr. James Adair observes, that the French Canadians are highly censurable for debauching our peaceable Northern Indians with their “infernal catechism.”

Though I am not an advocate for creeds inimical to the peace of society, I believe the censure is too severe, for however formerly they might have been influenced by bigotted priests instilling into their minds sentiments unfavourable to the subjects of Great Britain, I am clearly of opinion, that they have for many years used their best endeavours to

inculcate the principles of the Gospel: indeed, it is always to be lamented when either politics or religion are made subservient to each other: this being properly considered, perhaps the French are not more blameable than other nations. We are too apt to involve others in our disputes, and religion is too frequently introduced by bigots to assist the cause they wish to support.

With regard to those Indians who have been accustomed to the society of English traders, and even preachers (sorry am I to observe it), their sentiments, manners, and practices are very different. The [32] alteration is manifestly for the worse; they have become more degenerate, and added to the turbulence of passions unsubdued by reason the vices of lying and swearing, which unfortunately they have learned from us.

The testimony of Mr. Sargeant, a gentleman of New England, supports this assertion; who relates, that in a journey to the Shawanese Indians (the allies and dependants of the Six Nations),[41] and some other tribes, when he offered to instruct them in the Christian religion, they 68rejected it with disdain; they even reproached Christianity, told him the traders would lie, cheat, and debauch their young women, and even their wives, when the husbands were from home. They further added, that the Senekas had given them their country, but charged them never to receive Christianity from the English.

I shall subjoin one more proof to this. Governor Hunter, by order of Queen Anne, presented the Indians with cloaths, and other things of which they were extremely fond; and addressing them at a council, which was held at Albany, told them that their good mother the Queen had not only generously provided them with fine cloaths for their bodies, but likewise intended to adorn their souls by the preaching of the Gospel, and that some ministers should be sent to instruct them. When the governor had finished his speech, the oldest chief rose up and said, that, in the name of all the Indians, he thanked their good mother the Queen for the fine cloaths she had sent them; but that in regard to the ministers, they had already some of them, who, instead of preaching the Gospel to them, taught them to drink to excess, to cheat and quarrel among themselves, and entreated the governor [33] to take from them the preachers, and a number of Europeans who came among them; for before their arrival, the Indians were honest, sober and innocent people; but now most of them were rogues; that they formerly had the fear of God: but that now they hardly believed his existence.

To extenuate as much as possible this charge against the English, let it be observed, that the vice and immorality complained of, is to be attributed in a great measure to the traders, who used to purchase convicts, and hire men of infamous character to carry up their goods among the 69Indians, many of whom ran away from their masters to join the Savages: the iniquitous conduct of those people essentially injured the English in the opinion of the Indians and fixed an odium which will not be soon or easily removed.

70[34] Description of the Indian Dances, &c.

Having finished this long digression, I shall continue my history from the time of going to the village of the Connecedagas, where I stayed some months, making several excursions in scouting parties, and frequently bringing in prisoners, which did not escape the notice of Sir Guy Carleton, who at the next interview approved my conduct, and wished me to serve again in his regiment. I told him I was extremely happy I had rendered myself useful to my country, and considered myself highly honoured by so flattering a mark of his approbation; but that the life of a volunteer, though very honourable, would not entitle me to pay, and there was not a vacancy in any of the British regiments: he then appointed me a midshipman on board the ship *Fell*, commanded by captain Barnsfer, lying in the river St. Laurence, in which service I continued till she was ordered for England.

As soon as I quitted the navy, I returned to the Lake of the Two Mountains, and continued doing my utmost, in the line of an interpreter, and at intervals perfecting myself in the Indian languages, particularly in the Chippeway tongue, as I purposed engaging in the service of a merchant, to go to the north west the first convenient opportunity. I also applied myself sedulously to obtain a complete knowledge of their manners and customs, and with that view partook of their amusements, and was soon noticed as a good dancer. To this [35] qualification I also added the perfect notes of the different war whoops, as naturally as a Savage; and by conforming to their ways, and taking pleasure in their diversions, I was soon endeared to them, and left them with regret.

71The dances among the Indians are many and various, and to each of them there is a particular hoop.[42]

The calumet dance.

2.

The war dance.

3.

The chief's dance.

4.

The set out dance.

5.

The scalp dance.

6.

The dead dance.

7.

The prisoner's dance.

8.

The return dance.

9.

The spear dance.

10.

The marriage dance.

11.

The sacrifice dance.

All these I was perfect master of, frequently leading the sett. If accidentally a stranger came among us, (unless I chose to be noticed) no one could distinguish me from the Indians.

Presuming on my appearing exactly like a Savage, I occasionally went down in a canoe to Montreal, and frequently passed the posts as an Indian. Sometimes I would distinguish myself at a charivari, which is a custom that prevails in different parts of Canada, of

assembling with old pots, kettles, &c. and beating them at the doors of new married people; but generally, either when the man is older than the woman, or the parties have been twice married: in those cases they beat a charivari, hallooing out very vociferously, until the man is obliged to obtain their silence by pecuniary contribution, or submit to be [36] abused with the vilest language. Charivari, in French, means a paltry kind of music, which I suppose is the origin of the custom.

Not content with being a proficient in their sports, I learnt to make a canoe, bark a tree for the purpose, and perform the whole business as regular as the natives. I also made makissins, or Indian shoes, of deer skins, drest and smoked to make the leather soft and pliable, 72and worked with porcupine quills and small beads, to which are sometimes suspended hawk bells. Those made by the Mohawks, at the Grand River near Niagara, are preferred for their superior workmanship and taste, and are sometimes sold so high as four dollars a pair, but in general they may be purchased, without ornaments, for one dollar: they are more pleasant to wear than English shoes: in summer they are cooler to the feet, and in winter, from being made roomy, they will admit a thick sock, to prevent the excessive cold from penetrating. The Indians, in their war dances, sew hawk bells and small pieces of tin on them to make a jingling noise, and at a dance where I was present, these, with the addition of a large horse bell, which I gave the chief who led the dance, made a noise not much unlike a Dutch concert.

The Savages are esteemed very active and nimble footed, but admitting this general opinion to prevail, it is well known the Europeans are more swift in running a small distance: their chief merit, I am of opinion, consists in their being able to continue a long time in one steady pace, which makes them useful in going express through the woods; and as they require little sleep, and can subsist on roots and water, which they take en volant, they do not waste much time in refreshment. [37] They are also admirable swimmers, and are not afraid of the strongest current. With these qualifications they are certainly a very useful race of men; and as long as the English retain any possessions in Canada, should be considered as the most valuable acquisition; indeed, as indispensibly necessary; and every endeavour should be exerted to retain them in our interest.

With regard to bodily strength, they are excelled by many; and even in hunting, the Virginians equal them in 73every part of the chace, though all the world allow them the merit of being good marksmen. I remember seeing some Americans shooting at a loon, a

bird nearly the size of an English goose. This bird is remarkable for diving, and generally rises some yards from the place where it dips. They fired at the distance of one hundred and fifty yards with a rifle, several times without success: an Indian standing by, laughed at them, and told them they were old women: they desired him to try his skill, which he instantly did: taking his gun, and resting it against a tree, he fired, and shot the loon through the neck. I confess I never saw a better shot in my life, and was highly pleased, as it gratified my pride, in giving the Americans a favourable opinion of the Savages, for whom I always entertained a predilection.

The loon is a very remarkable bird, from the formation of its feet: but having no anatomical knowledge, I cannot describe it technically. They are so made, that it can scarcely walk; it is therefore seldom seen on land. In calm weather it rises from the water with great difficulty, and flies as impelled by the wind, on which it seems to depend. The method usually adopted by the Indians to kill these birds, is by fixing [38] a large bough at the head of the canoe, to conceal themselves till they paddle near the place where they are; when at a convenient distance, they fire, though not always with success. In the Chippeway language it is called a maunk, which agrees with the French word *manquer*, to fail; it being, from its shyness, very difficult to kill. The skin, which is very tough and thick, is dried and made use of as cases to cover their guns, to prevent the wet from spoiling them.

Having grown tired of living entirely with the Savages, I made an excursion to Montreal, where I met with an offer to go as interpreter to the north, which, at first, I did not care to accept; but as the salary proposed was handsome, upon mature deliberation, I embraced the opportunity of entering into that way of life, from which I fully expected profit at least, if not pleasure; but alas! I had often abundant reason to repent the pursuing the bent of my inclinations.

On the fourth of May, 1777, I left Montreal, with two large birch canoes, called by the French, *maître canots*, having ten Canadians in each, as the number of portages require many hands to transport the goods across the landings, which can only be done on men's shoulders. As their voyage is so essentially different from the English manner of travelling, I shall relate it particularly.

The canoes are made at Trois Rivières; they are, in general, eight fathoms long, and one and a half wide, covered with the bark of the birch tree, and sewed very close with fibrous roots; and of this size they will carry four tons weight each. As early in the spring as the ice will permit, they are brought up to La Chine, a village nine miles above Montreal.

[39] La Chine takes its name from the following story. Le Sieur La Salle, who was afterwards murdered by two of his own party, in Canada, in the year 1686, was very intent on discovering a shorter road to China than was then known, but his project failing by an accident which happened to him at this place, he was obliged to postpone his journey to the east, which induced the Canadians, by way of derision, to call it La Chine, or China; and by that name it has ever since been known.[43]

At this place the Indian goods are put on board very 75carefully; the dry merchandise in bales about eighty pounds weight, the rum, powder, and shot, in small kegs. The voyage from Trois Rivières to La Chine is tedious and troublesome, as there is a strong current to combat; and without a fair wind, and occasionally a brisk gale to assist or relieve the constant use of the paddles, it would be impossible to make any way. Where the water is shallow, the canoes must be forced forward with long setting poles, while the men wade knee deep, and pull against the current with ropes; this is a labour and fatigue beyond what will be easily imagined. Custom has however made the Canadians very expert, and I must do them the justice to say they encounter these difficulties with uncommon chearfulness, though they sometimes exclaim, "C'est la misere, mon bourgeois." [44]

From La Chine to Michillimakinac, there are thirty six portages; the distance by land and water is about nine hundred miles: in favourable weather the journey is frequently performed in about a month. Great care is necessary to steer the canoes up the strong rapids; to labour and care must also be added experience to keep them upright, and prevent their striking or rubbing against the stones, as they are very slight, and [40] easily damaged. Whenever by accident they receive an injury, as they frequently do, the hole is stopped with gum, melted with a piece of charcoal; the gum by wetting immediately becomes hard, and is capable of resisting the impression of the water. When the hole is too large to be stopped by gum only, the inner bark of the birch tree, 76pounded and tempered like mortar, is put on the aperture, this is covered by a linen rag, and the edges firmly cemented with gum.

We continued our voyage to La Barrière, at the head of the Long Saut, or long water fall, a very dangerous current from the extreme rapidity of the fall. At the top of this fall there are some traders settled, but they are not of any consequence either for the extent of their commerce, or the profits arising from the peltry they collect, the Savages in those parts being too well acquainted with the value of furs and skins to be imposed upon, unless when they are intoxicated, an advantage I must confess too frequently taken.

From this fall we proceeded to the Lake of the two Mountains, where there is a village belonging to the Connecedaga Indians, already described. At this place I stayed a day among my old friends, which was all the time my engagements would allow, as it is of the most material consequence in this branch of trade to be early at the wintering ground.

We proceeded to the Ottawa, or Grand River, coasting all the way till we came to Lake Nipissin, from whence the River St. Laurence takes its rise. We then entered the French River, leading to Lake Huron, and proceeded with very favourable weather to Michillimakinac, where we arrived on the 17th of June.[45]

[41] The country every where abounds with wild animals, particularly bears, moose and other deer, beavers, beaver eaters, lynx, foxes, squirrels, fishers, otters, martins, minx, 77wood cats, racoons, wolves, musquashes, &c.—There are scarce any but savage inhabitants to be found, who rove from place to place for subsistence, feeding on the animals they kill, except the skunk, or pole cat, which they never eat, unless pressed by the most extreme hunger.

Monsieur La Salle relates, that in his voyage on the banks of the Mississippi, among the nation of the Oumas, who live on a river of the same name, he saw a most extraordinary animal between the wolf and the lion; the head and shape resembling the former, and the tail and claws like those of the latter: he asserts it would attack all other animals, but was never known to hurt a man; that sometimes it would carry its prey on its back, and when it had eaten till satisfied, it concealed the rest under the leaves, or other cover; that every animal dreaded it to such a degree, that they would not touch any part of the prey it had left; and that the Indians called it Michibichi, which is an animal of the species of the tiger, but smaller and less speckled, and is now known to be the panther.

The beaver is a curious animal, but it has been described by so many authors, that I shall only observe what I believe they have not yet mentioned.—It is seldom seen in the day time: After sun set it leaves its habitation, and ventures abroad either to work, or procure food. It also takes this opportunity to wash itself. But the most remarkable singularity of this animal, is, that it lies with its tail constantly in the water, to prevent its getting stiff. The flesh of it is very good, either [42] boiled or roasted, but the tail is the best part.[46] While I am upon the subject of dainties, I may add, that the snout of the moose is also highly esteemed. Not any of the animals in North America are to be dreaded, except the grizzled bear, which generally keeps in as warm a climate as possible: wherever it comes it makes dreadful havock, destroying men, and even frequently whole families.

During the time I stayed at Michillimakinac, a remarkable circumstance of bravery and generosity was communicated to me, which may not be unentertaining to the reader.

An Indian boy, about fifteen years of age, was standing at some distance from the fort, when a Savage fired his gun, and accidentally killed an Englishman. As he was advancing, he discovered the boy leaning against a tree, and not being of the same nation, he formed the resolution of taking him prisoner: having no suspicion of the boy's intention, he went up to him, and took him by the arm; the boy very artfully drew back, and shot the Indian through the chin: this so incensed him, that he was raising his hand to tomahawk him, when another Indian instantly coming up, asked his companion who had wounded him? he replied, the boy, adding, that he would immediately take his scalp: the other prevented his bloody purpose, and told him he would protect the lad, for he was too brave to die. He carried him to the fort, where he was purchased by the commanding officer, to prevent the Indian whom he had wounded from killing him.

79[43] Description of Lake Superior, with the Ceremony of Indian Adoption.

Having taken in Indian corn, and hard grease, (the food all traders carry to the upper country) and exchanged my large canoes, or maître canots, for smaller ones, the latter being more convenient to transport across the carrying places, and better calculated to run into small creeks, we proceeded to the Falls of St. Mary, (a strait so called) which is formed by two branches that separate from each other at the furthest point of the lake. Here is a small picketted fort built by the Indians, and about ten log houses for the residence of English and French traders. The nation of the Sauteurs formerly were settled at the foot of the Falls, and the Jesuits had a house near them.[47] At this place there is abundance of

fine fish, particularly pickerill, trout, and white fish of an uncommon size. From this place we continued our 80voyage to Lake Superior, formerly called Lake Tracy, in honour of Mons. de Tracy, who was appointed viceroy of America by the French king in June, 1665. It is reckoned six hundred leagues in circumference, and on it are a great number of large and small islands. At the entrance of this lake is a high rock, somewhat in the shape of a man, which the Chippeway Indians call “Kitchee Manitoo,” or the Master of Life. Here they all stop to make their offerings, which they do by throwing tobacco, and other things, into the water: by this they intend to make an acknowledgment to the rock, as the representative of the Supreme Being, for the blessings they enjoy, cheerfully sacrificing to [44] him their ornaments, and those things which they hold most dear.[48] An example worthy of imitation, so far as respects the good intention of the creature to the Creator, exhibiting an evident proof that man in his natural state, without any of the refinements of civilization, is sensible of his dependance on an invisible power, however ignorantly, or unworthily, he may express his belief. God alone knoweth the heart, and will judge every man by the knowledge he hath.

Superstition is a noxious plant, but it hath flourished in every climate from the torrid to the frigid zone. If its effects have proved so pernicious among civilized nations, as we know they have, is it to be wondered that barbarians have suffered by it? The poor untutored Indian will not incur a great degree of censure for obeying the dictates of his uninformed nature, and following implicitly the custom of his ancestors. Revealed religion has not been given to all, and it is a melancholy reflection that those 81who have been enlightened by it, are not so superior to the Savages as one should naturally expect to find them.

In this rock there are several cavities near a mile in length, and about twenty feet in width, arched at the top. The lake freezes only close to the shore, the water being constantly in a swell, and the waves frequently mountains high, which is easily accounted for, when we consider its immense extent. On a calm day, a little distance from shore, sturgeon may be seen in very deep water. The surrounding land is high and rocky, and the woods extremely thick. The palm, birch, ash, spruce, and cedar, grow large, and in great abundance. The Northwest Company, established at Montreal, keep a vessel on [45] the lake to transport their goods from Michillimakinac to the grand portage on the northwest side, and return with the peltry collected in the inlands.[49]

On the 4th of July we arrived at Pays Plat,[50] on the north east side of the Lake, where we unpacked our goods, and made the bales smaller, having, by the Indian accounts, one hundred and eighty carrying places to the part where I intended to winter. On our landing we discovered at some distance a number of Indians, which induced us to accelerate the arrangement of the cargo, in case of barter, and be prepared to embark when the business was finished. Every thing being properly secured, I made up to the Savages, and calculated their number at one hundred and eighty: most of them were of the Chippeway tribes; the rest were of the nation of the Wasses. They gave me fish, dried meat, and skins, which I returned with trifling presents. The chief, whose name was Matchee Quewish,[51] held a council, and finding I understood their language, proposed to adopt me as a brother warrior. Though I had not undergone this ceremony, I was not entirely ignorant of the nature of it, having been informed by other traders of the pain they endured in their adoption, though they declared they were favoured exceedingly; I determined however to submit to it, lest my refusal of the honour intended me should be attributed to fear, and so render me unworthy of the esteem of those from whom I expected to derive great advantages, and with whom I had engaged to continue for a considerable time.

The ceremony of adoption is as follows.—A feast is prepared of dog's flesh boiled in bear's grease, with huckle berries, of which it is [46] expected every one should heartily partake. When the repast is over, the war song is sung in the following words.

“Master of Life, view us well; we receive a brother warrior who appears to have sense, shews strength in his arm, and does not refuse his body to the enemy.”

After the war song, if the person does not discover any signs of fear, he is regarded with reverence and esteem; courage, in the opinion of the Savages, being considered not only as indispensable, but as the greatest recommendation. He is then seated on a beaver robe, and presented with a pipe of war to Smoke, which is put round to every warrior, and a wampum belt is thrown over his neck.

The calumet, or Indian pipe, which is much larger than that the Indians usually smoke, is made of marble, stone, or clay, either red, white, or black, according to the custom of the nation, but the red is mostly esteemed; the length of the handle is about four feet and a half, and made of strong cane, or wood, decorated with feathers of various colours, with a

number of twists of female hair interwoven in different forms; the head is finely polished; two wings are fixed to it, which make it in appearance not unlike to Mercury's wand. This calumet is the symbol of peace, and the Savages hold it in such estimation, that a violation of any treaty where it has been introduced, would in their opinion be attended with the greatest misfortunes.[52]

Wampum is of several colours, but the white and black are chiefly used; the former is made of the inside of the conque, or clam shell; [47] the latter of the muscle: both are worked in the form of a long bead, and perforated in order to their being strung on leather, and made up in belts.

These belts are for various purposes: When a council is held, they are given out with the speeches, and always proportioned in their size, and the number of the rows of wampum which they contain, to the idea the Indians entertain of the importance of the meeting; they frequently consist of both colours. Those given to Sir William Johnson, of immortal Indian memory, were in several 84 rows, black on each side, and white in the middle: the white being placed in the centre, was to express peace, and that the path between them was fair and open. In the centre of the belt was the figure of a diamond, made of white wampum, which the Indians call the council fire.

When Sir William Johnson held a treaty with the Savages, he took the belt by one end, while the Indian chief held the other: if the chief had any thing to say, he moved his finger along the white streak; if Sir William had any thing to communicate, he touched the diamond in the middle.

These belts are also the records of former transactions, and being worked in particular forms, are easily deciphered by the Indians, and referred to in every treaty with the white people. When a string or belt of wampum is returned, it is a proof that the proposed treaty is not accepted, and the negotiation is at an end.

But to return from this digression. When the pipe has gone round, a sweating house is prepared with six long poles fixed in the ground, [48] and pointed at the top; it is then covered with skins and blankets to exclude the air, and the area of the house will contain

only three persons. The person to be adopted is then stripped naked, and enters the hut with two chiefs; two large stones made red hot are brought in, and thrown on the ground; water is then brought in a bark dish, and sprinkled on the stones with cedar branches, the steam arising from which puts the person into a most profuse perspiration, and opens the pores to receive the other part of the ceremony.

When the perspiration is at the height, he quits the house, and jumps into the water; immediately on coming out a blanket is thrown over him, and he is led to the chief's hut, where he undergoes the following operation. 85Being extended on his back, the chief draws the figure he intends to make with a pointed stick, dipped in water in which gunpowder has been dissolved; after which, with ten needles dipped in vermilion, and fixed in a small wooden frame, he pricks the delineated parts, and where the bolder outlines occur, he incises the flesh with a gun flint; the vacant spaces, or those not marked with vermilion, are rubbed in with gunpowder, which produces the variety of red and blue; the wounds are then seared with punk wood, to prevent them from festering.

This operation, which is performed at intervals, lasts two or three days. Every morning the parts are washed with cold water, in which is infused an herb called Pockqueesegan, which resembles English box, and is mixed by the Indians with the tobacco they smoke, to take off the strength. During the process, the war songs are sung, accompanied by a rattle hung round with hawk bells, called chessaquoy, [49] which is kept shaking, to stifle the groans such pains must naturally occasion.[53] Upon the ceremony being completed, they give the party a name; that which they allotted to me, was Amik, or Beaver.

In return for the presents given me by Matchee Quewish, which I had only acknowledged by some trinkets, and to shew how much I was pleased with the honour they had conferred on me, I resolved to add to my former gifts; I accordingly took the chiefs to a spot where I had directed my men to place the goods intended for them, and gave them scalping knives, tomahawks, vermilion, tobacco, beads, &c. and lastly rum, the unum necessarium, without which (whatever else had been bestowed 86on them) I should have incurred their serious displeasure. Our canoes being turned up, and the goods properly secured, I told the Canadians to keep a constant watch, night and day, while we were encamped. This precaution is absolutely necessary, as the Indians generally do mischief when they are intoxicated. On this occasion our care was of infinite service, for with the rum we gave them, they continued in a state of inebriety three days and nights, during which frolic they

killed four of their own party; one of whom was a great chief, and was burnt by his son: having been a famous warrior, he was buried with the usual honours peculiar to the Savages, viz. a scalping knife, tomahawk, beads, paint, &c. some pieces of wood to make a fire, and a bark cup to drink out of in his journey to the other country.

On the 21st we embarked, leaving the band extremely well satisfied with our conduct, which they acknowledged in the most expressive language; but as it was customary to take conductors from one Lake to another, I engaged twenty of the Chippeways to accompany me in passing [50] by land the Grande Côte de la Roche, which is the rout that all the traders are obliged to take, on account of the great cataract, which is reckoned six hundred feet in height near the entrance of the Nipegon River. This journey is extremely fatiguing to the men, who are obliged to ascend a steep hill with considerable burdens, and for this reason it is customary to rest two or three days to recruit their strength.

We left la Grande Côte de la Roche in good spirits, and continued our voyage to Lake Alemipigon, where we met another band of Savages of the same nation. A council was held, and mutual presents exchanged. We stayed here ten days, encamped by the side of the Lake; during 87which time a skirmish happened among the Indians, in which three men were killed, and two wounded, after a dreadful scene of riot and confusion, occasioned by the baneful effects of rum.

Lake Alemipigon, or Nipegon,[54] is about one hundred miles in length, and supplies the Savages with great quantities of fish. The land affords abundance of wild roots, and the animals are very numerous. The Indians who hunt here are in number about three hundred, and are remarkably wild and superstitious.

88On the first of August we departed with fifteen Indians, not only to serve as guides, but to assist us across the portages. We lived on animal food and roots, reserving our corn and hard grease for the winter. Every evening at sun set we encamped, and got into our canoes at break of day. We continued our march to Lac Eturgeon, or Sturgeon Lake, but did not stay there a sufficient time to enable me to give a particular account of it; I have, however, described it in the narrative [51] of my journey to Lake Manontoye, where I encamped for three days on account of the badness of the weather.

On the twenty fifth of September we arrived at Lac la Mort, or Dead Lake, situate to the northeast of Lake Alemipigon. This Lake is about sixty miles in circumference, the land low and swampy, and the water very unpleasant to the palate: it has been much frequented by the Indians, for, during the time I wintered there, I discovered no less than thirty-five different roads, about three feet wide, leading from the woods to the Lake side: it abounds with fish, and is frozen over in the winter, the ice not breaking away till April. The Indians who resort to it are good hunters, but very wild. The Chippeways are not so fond of dress as the other Savages, particularly those tribes who live very remote from Michillimakinac; this is easily accounted for; as the ice remains almost to the last spring month in England, and the winter season begins early in the month of October, the intermediate time is employed in making and repairing canoes, taking short excursions for food, amusing themselves in swimming, and other pastimes peculiar to the Savages. The luxury of dress can be little regarded by those whose constant necessities require the utmost exertions for their daily supply, and who are not provident enough to lay up a store of provisions for winter. Indians in general are extremely indolent, from the wildest to the most civilized, and value themselves upon being so; conceiving it beneath the dignity of a warrior to labour, and that all domestic cares and concerns are the province of women alone. This aversion for labour does not arise from dread, or dislike of fatigue; on the contrary, no people encounter or endure it with more cheerfulness, particularly in their amusements, which are of various kinds, and many of them [52] violent and laborious. They are calculated to make them athletic, and at the same time by the profuse perspiration which they occasion, they render the joints supple, and enable them to hunt with more facility.

Playing at ball, which is a favourite game, is very fatiguing. The ball is about the size of a cricket ball, made of deer skin, and stuffed with hair; this is driven forwards and backwards with short sticks, about two feet long, and broad at the end like a bat, worked like a racket, but with larger interstices: by this the ball is impelled, and from the elasticity of the racket, which is composed of deers' sinews, is thrown to a great distance: the game is played by two parties, and the contest lies in intercepting each other, and striking the ball into a goal, at the distance of about four hundred yards, at the extremity of which are placed two high poles, about the width of a wicket from each other; the victory consists in driving the ball between the poles. The Indians play with great good humour, and even when one of them happens, in the heat of the game, to strike another with his stick, it is not resented. But these accidents are cautiously avoided, as the violence with which they strike has been known to break an arm or a leg.[55]

Athtergain, or miss none but catch all, is also a favourite amusement with them, in which the women frequently take a part. It is played with a number of hard beans, black and white, one of which has small spots, and is called the king: they are put into a shallow wooden bowl, and shaken alternately by each party, who sit on the ground opposite to one another; whoever is dexterous enough to make the spotted bean jump out of the bowl, receives of the adverse party [53] as many beans as there are spots: the rest of the beans do not count for any thing.[56]

The boys are very expert at trundling a hoop, particularly the Cahnuaga Indians, whom I have frequently seen excel at this amusement. The game is played by any number of boys who may accidentally assemble together, some driving the hoop, while others with bows and arrows shoot at it. At this exercise they are surprisingly expert, and will stop the progress of the hoop when going with great velocity, by driving the pointed arrow into its edge; this they will do at a considerable distance, and on horseback as well as on foot. They will also kill small birds at fifty yards distance, and strike a halfpenny off a stick at fifteen yards. Spears and tomahawks they manage with equal dexterity.

91[54] Settlement at Lac la Mort, with the Proceedings of a Trading Party.

The fatigue my Canadians had undergone rendered it necessary to prepare for wintering, and induced me to settle at Lac la Mort. The weather was also setting in cold, and threatened to be very severe, which was an additional motive. Having refreshed ourselves, and secured the canoes, I took two Indians to shew me a spot proper for building upon. We fixed close to the lake side, where we erected a loghouse, thirty feet long, and twenty feet wide, divided into two apartments, into which we deposited our goods. The next concern was to conceal our canoes in the woods, and to hide the rum under ground, except a small quantity for immediate use, knowing by experience the necessity of keeping it from the Indians, as our safety so essentially depended on it.

Having arranged every domestic concern, and spread our table in the wilderness, we prepared our winter firing, as wood is very difficult to bring home in severe weather. At leisure times we hunted, to increase our stock of provisions, which would not have been sufficient to support our household, and not choosing to risk the uncertainty of the arrival of Savages, who sometimes bring animal food to the traders. As the snow began to fall very heavy, we were prevented from making [55] long excursions, without using snow shoes. For the space of a fortnight we hunted with great success, and caught a number of small

animals, on which we feasted daily; these proved a seasonable relief, and saved the corn and grease. We had been settled about three weeks, when a large band of Savages arrived; having only eight Canadians with me, I desired them to act with the utmost precaution, as our number ⁹²was comparatively small, and in case of a drunken frolic, the property might be pillaged, and our lives sacrificed: fortunately for me I had very steady men, who were well accustomed to the Northwest Indians. We were mutually pleased with each other, as no trader had wintered there before. The great chief, whose name was Kesconeek, made me a present of skins, dried meat, fish, and wild oats; a civility which I returned without delay, and in a manner with which he seemed highly gratified. The rest of the Savages then came into my house, one by one, which is called Indian file, singing war songs, and dancing. All of them, except the chief, placed themselves on the ground; he, standing upright with great dignity in the centre of the tribe, delivered the following speech.

“Angaymer Nocey, wa haguamissey kaygo arwayyor kee zargetoone oway barthtyage Nishinnorbay nogome cawwickca kitchee Artawway winnin, kitchee morgussey cargoneek neennerwind zargetoone artawway neennerwind debwoye Nocey barthtyage meekintargan omar appeemeenequy, mackquah, amik, warbeshance menoach kegonce.”——

“It is true, Father, I and my young men are happy to see you:—as the great Master of Life has sent a trader to take pity on us Savages, we shall use our best endeavours to hunt and bring you wherewithal to satisfy you in furs, skins, and animal food.”

[56] This speech was in fact intended to induce me to make them further presents; I indulged them in their expectations, by giving them two kegs of rum of eight gallons each, lowered with a small proportion of water, according to the usual custom adopted by all traders, five carrots of tobacco, fifty scalping knives, gun-flints, powder, shot, ball, &c. To the women I gave beads, ⁹³trinkets, &c. and to eight chiefs who were in the band, each a Northwest gun, a callico shirt, a scalping knife of the best sort, and an additional quantity of ammunition. These were received with a full yo-hah, or demonstration of joy.

The women, who are on all occasions slaves to their husbands, were ordered to make up bark huts, which they completed in about an hour, and every thing was got in order for merriment. The rum being taken from my house, was carried to their wigwaum, and they began to drink. The frolic lasted four days and nights; and notwithstanding all our

precaution (securing their guns, knives, and tomahawks) two boys were killed, and six men wounded by three Indian women; one of the chiefs was also murdered, which reduced me to the necessity of giving several articles to bury with him, to complete the usual ceremony of their interment. These frolics are very prejudicial to all parties, and put the trader to a considerable expence, which nevertheless he cannot with safety refuse. On the fifth day they were all sober, and expressed great sorrow for their conduct, lamenting bitterly the loss of their friends.

On the 26th of October they departed for the hunt, which gave us great satisfaction, as we had scarcely rested during their abode with [57] us. When they got into their canoes, they sung the dead war song.—“Wabindam, Kitchee Mannitoo, haguarmissey hapitch neatissum:”—or, “Master of Life, view me well, you have given me courage to open my veins.”

Having piled the winter’s firing at a convenient distance from the house to prevent accidents, we prepared the nets for fishing. The ice was three feet thick, and the snow very deep; this we were obliged to clear away, before 94we could cut holes in which to put our nets. For the space of two months we had uncommon success, having caught about eighteen thousand weight of fish, which we hung up by the tails across sticks to freeze, and then laid them up for store. This was to us an important acquisition, as fishing in the middle of winter is precarious, and the return of the Indians to supply the wants of the traders very uncertain.

In summer the fishers go up the lakes, as well as rivers, and are generally most successful at the foot of a deep stream, or the mouth of a creek. In the beginning of winter they cut a large opening, and set nets. In the depth of winter they make a small hole, in which they angle; and sometimes they cut two holes in a right line through the ice, and pass a line at the end of a stick from hole to hole, by which they haul the net under the ice, frequently with good success. In winter, fishing is the daily employ of half the men, though in very severe weather it is a fatiguing service.

In the beginning of January, 1778, our provisions run short, having nothing left but some spawn of fish, which we beat up with [58] warm water and lived upon. The intense severity of the weather would not allow us to look after the nets; and although thus distressed for

want of better food, we were obliged to stay at home, keeping a large fire, and lying almost continually on our blankets, which weakened us exceedingly. Having remained in this inactive state for some time, and hunger pressing hard, I roused myself, and proposed to my men to make marten traps, which they went about with the utmost cheerfulness. When they had finished a sufficient number, they set them in the woods, at the distance of about two miles from the house. While they were employed in this service, I was left alone, it being necessary for some one to remain, in case of the arrival of Savages. The first day my men were successful, and returned with two racoons, three hares, and four musquashes; on these we feasted the next day; and though we were not satisfied, they proved a seasonable relief, and enabled us to pursue the business we were engaged in with greater spirits, fondly expecting more prosperous days.

In a little time we were again destitute, and the men became disheartened; this induced me to propose a journey to Lake Manontoye, where we knew Mr. Shaw,[57] a brother trader, had wintered, to endeavour to procure some wild rice, which the Indians told me grew in the swamps at that place. The Canadians approved of the plan, and said they hoped they should be able to provide for their subsistence till my return. Previous to my departure, we were compelled to kill a favourite dog, belonging to Joseph Boneau, one of my people, which most sensibly affected us, because, independent of the attachment we had towards him, he was a very useful animal. The next morning I put on my snow shoes, and persuaded an Indian and his wife, who were with [59] me occasionally, and had accidentally come in from the hunt with six hares, to accompany me, promising them payment in rum at my return: they agreed to go, and it was very fortunate they did, as I could not have found the way without a guide.

We set off with the six hares, and travelled four days without killing any thing; this was a disappointment, but with the little stock we carried with us, we subsisted tolerably well. About an hour before sunset on the 96th fourth day, we stopped at a small creek, which was too deep to be forded, and whilst the Indian was assisting me in making a raft to cross over, rather than swim through in such cold weather, against a strong current, I looked round, and missed his wife: I was rather displeased, as the sun was near setting, and I was anxious to gain the opposite shore, to encamp before dark. I asked the Indian where she was gone; he smiled, and told me, he supposed into the woods to set a collar for a partridge. In about an hour she returned with a newborn infant in her arms, and coming up to me, said in Chippeway, “Oway Saggonash Payshik Shomagonish,” or, “Here, Englishman, is a young warrior.” It is said that the Indian women bring forth children with very little pain,

but I believe it is merely an opinion. It is true they are strong and hardy, and will support fatigue to the moment of their delivery; but this does not prove they are exempt from the common feelings of the sex on such trying occasions. A young woman of the Rat Nation has been known to be in labour a day and a night, without a groan. The force of example acting upon their pride, will not allow these poor creatures to betray a weakness, or express the pain they feel, probably lest the husband should think her unworthy of his future attention, and despise both mother and child: at any rate, he would tell her the infant, [60] if a boy, would never be a warrior; and if a girl, would have a dastardly spirit, and of course neither of them be fit for a Savage life.

I believe it will not be disputed that the Indian women love their children with as much affection as parents in the most civilized states can boast; many proofs might be adduced to support this assertion. A mother suckles her child till it attains the age of four or five years, and sometimes 97till it is six or seven. From their infant state they endeavour to promote an independent spirit; they are never known either to beat or scold them, lest the martial disposition which is to adorn their future life and character, should be weakened: on all occasions they avoid every thing compulsive, that the freedom with which they wish them to think and act may not be controuled. If they die, they lament their death with unfeigned tears, and even for months after their decease will weep at the graves of their departed children. The nation of Savages called Biscatonges, or by the French, Pleureurs, are said to weep more bitterly at the birth of a child, than at its decease; because they look upon death only as a journey from whence he will return, but with regard to his birth, they consider it as an entrance into a life of perils and misfortunes.[58]

As soon as a child is born, if in summer, the mother goes into the water, and immerses the infant; as soon as this is done, it is wrapped up in a small blanket, and tied to a flat board, covered with dry moss, in the form of the bottom of a coffin, with a hoop over the top, where the head lies, to preserve it from injury. In winter it is clad in skins as well as blankets. In the heat of summer gauze is thrown over the young Savage, to keep off the musquitoes, which are very troublesome [61] in the woods. The board, on which the child is placed, is slung to the mother's forehead with a broad worsted belt, and rests against her back.

When the French took possession of Canada, the women had neither linen, nor swaddling cloaths; all their childbed 98furniture consisted of a kind of trough, filled with dry rotten

wood dust, which is as soft as the finest down, and well calculated to imbibe the moisture of the infant; on this the child was placed, covered with rich furs, and tied down with strong leather strings. The dust was changed as often as necessary, till the child was weaned.[59]

Among the Indians who are in any degree civilized, the women feed their children with pap made of Indian corn and milk, if it can be obtained; but in the parts more northern, and remote from Europeans, wild rice and oats are substituted, which being cleansed from the husk, and pounded between two stones, are boiled in water with maple sugar: this food is reckoned very nourishing, and with broth made from the flesh of animals and fish, which they are frequently able to procure, cannot fail of supporting and strengthening the infant. Among several of the tribes of Indians, pap is made of sagavite, from a root they call toquo, of the bramble kind; this is washed and dried, afterwards ground, or pounded, and made into a paste, which being baked is pleasant to the taste, but of a very astringent quality. It is their common bread.

On our arrival at Lac Eturgeon, as the weather was bad, we encamped three days, which gave me an opportunity of making some observations [62] on this Lake, which I could not do when I passed it in my way to Lac la Mort.

This Lake, by the Indian accounts, is about five days journey by water: the width in some parts is about thirty miles. There are a number of small islands on it which abound with hares, partridges, and wild fowl. The 99 Indians who frequent it are the Hawoyzask or Musquash, who speak the Chippeway language. They are usually more stationary than the generality of the Chippeways; they seldom leave the inlands, and are excellent hunters. Mr. Carver, in his chart, points out a village leading to Rivière St. Croix, which he says belongs to the roving Chippeways; but I believe all the nation, with very few exceptions, may be called rovers in the strictest sense of the word.[60]

The first day of our encampment we killed a hare, made fish-hooks of the thigh bones, and baited them with the flesh. The lines were made of the bark of the willow tree cut into slips, and twisted hard together. Success crowned our endeavours, for we not only caught sufficient for present use, but enough for the remainder of the journey to Lake Manontoye.

The day before our arrival we killed two otters, which I intended as a present to Mr. Shaw, not doubting but any animal food would be acceptable from the severity of the season, concluding that his situation was as bad as our own, except in the article of wild oats. When arrived within about six miles of the lake, we met a small party of Indians, who alarmed us by an account of a dreadful confusion among their tribe, occasioned by the Hudson's Bay Savages having killed three of their [63] band; and they said they believed Mr. Shaw had fallen a sacrifice to their fury, as they had heard them consult 100together to plunder the trader. They lamented exceedingly their inability to assist him, not being even strong enough to resent their own personal injury; however, they promised to accompany me on the way, as near to Mr. Shaw's house as their safety would admit.

Having taken refreshment, we pursued our journey till within two miles of the house, when they thought it prudent to leave me, and wishing me success, retired into the woods, out of the track, to avoid being seen, where they promised to stay till my return. My Indian and his wife did not choose to proceed any farther, being also afraid of the Hudson's Bay Savages. I confess my situation was very unpleasant, and I debated in my mind what steps to take to attempt the relief of a brother trader, and at the same time avoid injury myself. Relying on my usual success in suppressing these kind of tumults occasioned by intoxication, and conscious that I knew as well as any man the nature of the Indians when under its pernicious influence, I did not doubt, however unsuccessful my endeavours might prove as to rescuing Mr. Shaw from his perilous situation, but that I should certainly be able to effect an escape myself in case of an attack; and as one favourable suggestion frequently gives birth to another, and establishes by degrees a confidence in the mind, I anticipated Mr. Shaw's delivery to my entire satisfaction. Fortified by these flattering hopes, I determined to exert my best and speediest endeavours in his behalf, and pursued my journey without delay. When I arrived within a quarter of a mile of the scene of discord, I heard the war-hoop in a manner very loud and clamorous; and though I had been accustomed [64] to such sounds, I was very much alarmed, and felt my resolution rather staggered; sensible that the rage of drunken Indians, 101when it has risen to a certain pitch, knows no bounds, and of the extreme difficulty of reconciling them to any person to whom they had unfortunately taken a dislike. Animated, however, with the idea of behaving like a warrior, and recurring to the time when I was adopted at Pays Plat, I conceived it unmanly to shrink from danger, and pushing through the woods, had soon a full view of the infernal spirits, for I could give them no better name.

I lay some minutes in ambush, listening with great attention, till I heard one of them cry out in the Chippeway language, “Haguarmissey mornooch gunnisar Cushecance;” or, “I do not mean to kill the Cat;” which was a name given to Mr. Shaw by the Indians, from his speaking in a feeble voice. This convinced me he was alive, though in imminent danger. I made all possible haste up to the house, and found the Savages, both men and women, completely drunk. The huts had been knocked down, the canoes adrift, and the whole formed the most dreadful scene of confusion I had ever beheld. There were also an old Indian and a woman, who I afterwards learned was his mother, lying dead upon the snow by the lake side. I made several efforts to get into the house, but was prevented by the Savages, who kept me back, kissing me, and telling me they loved me, but that I must not attempt to relieve the Cat. At last, with inconceivable difficulty, I persuaded them to attend to me, and felt the most extreme satisfaction in having succeeded, at least so far, in an attempt which would have been dangerous to any one to have undertaken who was not fully master of the language and character of the Savages, and [65] at the same time cool and dispassionate enough to hear their nonsense with patience and temper.

I then addressed myself to the most sober of the chiefs, 102 and inquired of him the cause of the dispute; he told me Mr. Shaw was a dog instead of a cat, for that he had refused them rum; and that though he and the rest of the tribe were happy to see me, because they had heard I always had a good heart towards the Savages, I should not go in to assist the trader, for they were the masters of the wigwaum, and not he, and that they were resolved to have all the rum in his possession before break of day.

Mr. Shaw’s house might very properly be styled a fort, being secured by high pickets, which made it difficult for the Indians to approach it, and he had taken the precaution to fasten the outer gate as well as the door. I told the chief it was not my intention to interfere, that I passed accidentally in my way to Lac le Rouge, and should only stay to refresh myself. This information pleased him exceedingly, as he knew Mr. Shaw had only one man in the house, the rest, with the interpreter, being out in search of provisions, so that at my departure there would not remain force sufficient to obstruct their proceedings. I perceived them so fully bent on accomplishing their purpose, that had I betrayed the least intention or inclination to relieve the unhappy man, I should most probably have been dispatched without much ceremony. The effects of the rum they had already drank, had so elevated their spirits, that nothing less than the full possession of the whole stock would satisfy them; and I am persuaded that if half of them had perished, the rest would without hesitation have risked their lives in the attempt. To avoid all suspicion, [66] which would

probably have been fatal both to Mr. Shaw and myself, I left the chief, and watched an opportunity of returning undiscovered. Fortunately the Indians had not drunk all the rum Mr. Shaw had given them, and the chief as soon as I had left ¹⁰³him went back to his hut to increase his intoxication, and communicate the conversation which passed between us, the rest of the band having retired soon after the conference began.

Observing the coast clear, I walked unobserved to the fort, and spoke loud both in French and English: Mr. Shaw and his man heard me, and recollecting my voice, were transported beyond measure. The man, who was a Canadian, was most delighted, as his fears were very strong, it being the first year he had wintered among the Savages. On my approach, I heard him cry out with the greatest vehemence, “Mon Dieu! que je suis content! Nôtre ami est arrivé, autrement nous serions foutu. Je conte assurément, que nous serons bientôt libre, mon cher bourgeois.” He instantly opened the gate; I entered precipitately, and congratulated him on the prospect of counteracting the designs of the Indians, being resolved to exert my best endeavours, and to live or die with them. Mr. Shaw thanked me for my professions of friendship, and immediately gave me a concise account of the disturbance. He said the Hudson’s Bay Indians had come to him with very little peltry, and after trading for it, he had given them more rum than they had any right to expect; that instead of being content with this, they insisted on more; that in a fit of intoxication they had killed an Indian and his mother; and had attempted to set fire to his house with punk wood, which they shot at it lighted, fixed to the points of arrows. Having heard his story, I encouraged him to keep up his spirits, and advised ^[67]him, when the Indians returned to execute their purpose, to appear indifferent to their menaces.

Whilst we were in deep discourse, I discovered three chiefs at a small distance from the house, in very earnest ¹⁰⁴conversation, and was convinced they were devising some scheme to effect their design. As they approached, I called to them, and desired them to come into the house: they immediately advanced, and walked in one by one, with looks of treachery, which the earnestness of the business to be executed would not allow them to conceal. I talked to them without the least reserve, and in apparent good temper: I asked them if they were sober; but before they could give me an answer, the rest of the band came to the door, but did not enter; the head chief then told me they were very sober, and expressed great concern for their conduct, but that now the strong water had lost its influence, they saw their folly, and were sure the bad spirit had left their hearts.

I told them the Master of Life was angry with them, and that they did not deserve success in hunting, for their bad behaviour to the trader, who had been a kind father to them, and supplied all their wants. I then presented them with some tobacco to smoke in council, which was well received, and looking earnestly at the chief, addressed the band to the following effect.

“Keennerwind Ojemar woke, kee wabindan indenendum kee kee noneydone Kitchee Mannitoo, oje candan opin weene aighter oje petoone nowwetting guyack debarchemon kaygait nin oathy hapadgey nee woke keennerwind equoy kee janis goyer metach nogome gudderbarchemon [68] hunjyta O, nishshishshin artawway winnin kaygait nee zargetoone artawway winnin metach kakaygo arwayyor Matchee Mannitoo, guyack neennerwind oathy mornooch kee appay omar neegee.”

“You chiefs, and others of the tribe whose eyes are open, I hope you will give ear to the words of my mouth. The Master of Life has opened my brain, and made my 105breath blow good words. My heart feels for you, your wives, and children; and what I now speak proceeds from the root of my friend’s sentiments, who owns this house, and who has told me that his heart was opened to you on your arrival; but notwithstanding his kindness, the bad spirit got possession of you, which made him very unhappy, though he hoped the Master of Life would change your dispositions, and make you good Indians, as you used to be.” To this speech one of the chiefs made answer:

“Kaygait Amik, kee aighter annaboycassey omar hapadgey; O, nishshishshin kee debarchemon nogome neennerwind oje stootewar cockinnor nee doskeennerwaymug kee debwoye neecarnis hapadgey sannegat neennerwind ha nishinnorbay kaygwotch annaboycassey ozome Scuttaywabo oje minniquy neennerwind angaymer Amik, shashyyea suggermarsh cockinnor nogome mornooch toworch payshik muccuk Scuttaywabo oje bockettynan Cushshecance warbunk keejayp neennerwind oje boossin;—haw, haw, haw.”

“It is true, Beaver, you have strong sense, it sweetens your words to us, and we all understand you. We know, friend, your lips open with truth. It is very hard for us Indians, who have not the sense of the white people to know when we have had enough of the strong [69] fiery water; but we hope the Cat will throw off the film from his heart, as ours are

clear: we also hope he will open his heart once more, and give us a small keg of the strong water, to drink to the health of our brother and sister, whom we have sent to the far country, and to-morrow at break of day we will depart.”

Mr. Shaw, by my advice, promised to comply with their request, on condition of their being true to their engagements, 106and that they should forbear even tasting the rum while they remained on the ground. This determination I acquainted them with, and they retired to their huts, leaving us in quiet possession of the fort.

The Indians remained quiet all night, which induced me to hope that my promise of rum to them, on their departure, had accomplished the desired effect: but I flattered myself too much, as the storm was not yet even at the height. At break of day they assembled, and asked for the rum, which was immediately given them; and they got into their canoes, and went off without burying their dead. This being very unc customary, alarmed me, as no people are more particular in paying the greatest respect to the remains of the deceased. Suspecting the bad spirit was still in them, and that they were only gone a short distance to drink the rum, we prepared for an attack, loading twenty eight northwest guns, and a brace of pistols, and sat down by the fire expecting their return to compleat the design my fortunate arrival had hitherto prevented. In about an hour they returned very much intoxicated, singing their dead war songs, and every warrior naked, painted black from head to foot: as they approached the house in Indian file, each one repeated the following words; “Mornooch toworch gunnesar [70] cushshecance neennerwind ojey dependan O wakaygan:” or, “Nevertheless we do not mean to kill the Cat, we only own this fort, and all that is in it.”

Whilst they were singing, we were preparing our guns, and placing them so as to be ready for immediate use, if necessary; being determined to make a vigorous resistance, although there remained only Mr. Shaw and myself, the Canadian having fled to the woods.

I assumed the character of commander in chief, and 107desired Mr. Shaw to obey my orders implicitly, and by no means to fire till I gave the signal; well knowing that the death of one of the Savages, even in our own defence, would so exasperate the rest that there would not be a possibility of escaping their fury. As our situation was truly critical, we acted with as much coolness as men devoted to destruction could. A fortunate thought came into my

head, which I instantly put in practice: I went into the store, and rolling a barrel of gunpowder into the outer room, knocked out the head. I had scarcely finished it, before the Savages arrived, and advancing to the door, armed with spears and tomahawks, said to each other, “keen etam,” or, “you go first.” We stood ready to receive them, and gave them to understand we were not afraid of them. One of the band entered the house, and I said to him sternly, “Ha wa neyoe shemagonish equoy kee tertennin marmo?” or, “Who now among you old women is a brave soldier?” and immediately pointing my pistol cocked to the barrel of gunpowder, cried out with great emphasis, “Cockinnor marmo neepoo no gome;” or, “We will all die this day.” On hearing these words they ran from the door, crying, “Kitchee Mannitoo oje petoone Amik O mushkowar haguarmissey yang:” [71] or, “The Master of Life has given the Beaver great strength and courage.” The women fled with the utmost precipitation, pushed their canoes into the water, and got off as fast as they could: the men, who before were intoxicated, became sober, and making as much haste as possible, paddled to an island opposite the house. Soon after a canoe came on shore with six women, to endeavour to make up the breach; but I refused all reconciliation, telling them that they might have known me before; that my name was Beaver; that all the Indians knew me to be 108a warrior; and that my heart was not easily melted. The women immediately returned, carrying with them the dead, which satisfied me they did not intend to trouble us again.

Thus, by an happy presence of mind, we were saved from almost inevitable destruction, and probably from ending our lives under the most excruciating torture.

It may not be improper to observe the necessity there is for a trader to be cool, firm, and, in case of emergency, brave, but not rash or hasty. The Indians are just observers of the human mind, and easily discover true from affected courage, by that apparent tranquillity which clearly distinguishes the former from the latter. It is well known that no people in the world put courage to so severe a trial, and watch at the executions of their enemies with such savage curiosity, the effects of the tortures they inflict; even the women exult in proportion to the agony betrayed by the unhappy sufferer; though it frequently happens thro’ the same spirit operating on both parties, that the most excruciating torments cannot extort a sigh. An example or two from Mr. Adair’s History of the American Indians, will shew the firmness of an Indian [72] mind, and prove beyond a doubt that such anecdotes are not exaggerated. Truth should be the standard of history, and guide the pen of every author who values his reputation.

Some years ago the Shawano Indians being obliged to remove from their habitations, in their way took a Muskohge warrior, known by the name of old Scraney, prisoner; they bastinadoed him severely, and condemned him to the fiery torture. He underwent a great deal without shewing any concern; his countenance and behaviour were as if he suffered not the least pain. He told his 109 persecutors with a bold voice, that he was a warrior; that he had gained most of his martial reputation at the expence of their nation, and was desirous of shewing them, in the act of dying, that he was still as much their superior, as when he headed his gallant countrymen against them: that although he had fallen into their hands, and forfeited the protection of the divine power by some impurity or other, when carrying the holy ark of war against his devoted enemies, yet he had so much remaining virtue as would enable him to punish himself more exquisitely than all their despicable ignorant crowd possibly could; and that he would do so, if they gave him liberty by untying him, and handing him one of the red hot gun-barrels out of the fire. The proposal, and his method of address, appeared so exceedingly bold and uncommon, that his request was granted. Then suddenly seizing one end of the red hot barrel, and brandishing it from side to side, he forced his way through the armed and surprised multitude, leaped down a prodigious steep and high bank into a branch of the river, dived through it, ran over a small island, and passed the other branch, amidst a shower of bullets; and though numbers of his enemies were in close pursuit of him, he got into a bramble swamp, [73] through which, though naked and in a mangled condition, he reached his own country.

The Shawano Indians also captured a warrior of the Anantoocah nation, and put him to the stake, according to their usual cruel solemnities: having unconcernedly suffered much torture, he told them, with scorn, they did not know how to punish a noted enemy; therefore he was willing to teach them, and would confirm the truth of his assertion if they allowed him the opportunity. Accordingly he requested of them a pipe and some tobacco, which 110 was given him; as soon as he had lighted it, he sat down, naked as he was, on the women's burning torches, that were within his circle, and continued smoking his pipe without the least discomposure: on this a head warrior leaped up, and said, they saw plain enough that he was a warrior, and not afraid of dying, nor should he have died, only that he was both spoiled by the fire, and devoted to it by their laws; however, though he was a very dangerous enemy, and his nation a treacherous people, it should be seen that they paid a regard to bravery, even in one who was marked with war streaks at the cost of many of the lives of their beloved kindred; and then, by way of favour, he with his friendly tomahawk instantly put an end to all his pains. Though the merciful but bloody instrument was ready

some minutes before it gave the blow, yet I was assured, the spectators could not perceive the sufferer to change either his posture or his steadiness of countenance in the least.

Death, among the Indians, in many situations is rather courted than dreaded, and particularly at an advanced period of life, when they [74] have not strength or activity to hunt: the father then solicits to change his climate, and the son cheerfully acts the part of an executioner, putting a period to his parent's existence.

Among the northern Chippeways, when the father of a family seems reluctant to comply with the usual custom, and his life becomes burdensome to himself and friends, and his children are obliged to maintain him with the labour of their hands, they propose to him the alternative, either to be put on shore on some island, with a small canoe and paddles, bows and arrows, and a bowl to drink out of, and there run the risk of starving; or to suffer death according to the laws of the nation, manfully. 111As there are few instances where the latter is not preferred, I shall relate the ceremony practised on such an occasion.

A sweating house is prepared in the same form as at the ceremony of adoption, and whilst the person is under this preparatory trial, the family are rejoicing that the Master of Life has communicated to them the knowledge of disposing of the aged and infirm, and sending them to a better country, where they will be renovated, and hunt again with all the vigour of youth. They then smoke the pipe of peace, and have their dog feast: they also sing the grand medicine song, as follows.

“Wa haguarmissey Kitchee Mannitoo kaygait cockinnor nishinnorbay ojeey kee candan hapadgey kee zargetoone nishinnorbay mornooch kee tarpenan nocey keen aighter, O, dependan nishinnorbay, mornooch towwarch weene ojeey mishcoot pockcan tunnockay.— The Master of Life gives courage. It is true, all Indians know that he loves us, and [75] we now give our father to him, that he may find himself young in another country, and be able to hunt.”

The songs and dances are renewed, and the eldest son gives his father the death-stroke with a tomahawk: they then take the body, which they paint in the best manner, and bury it

with the war weapons, making a bark hut to cover the grave, to prevent the wild animals from disturbing it.

Thus do the unenlightened part of mankind assume a privilege of depriving each other of life, when it can no longer be supported by the labour of their own hands, and think it a duty to put a period to the existence of those to whom they are indebted for their own, and employ those arms to give the fatal stroke, which, in more civilized countries, would have been exerted for their support.

112I remained with Mr. Shaw until the return of his men, and took an Indian sloop, loaded with wild rice and dried meat, and two of his Canadians to assist me. In my way I called at the place where I left the Indians who communicated to me the first account of the tumult at Mr. Shaw's but they were gone. My Indian and his wife waited for me, and were rejoiced to see me again. On my return to Lac la Mort, I found all my men in good health and spirits, having been well supplied with provisions by the Savages, during my absence, and had increased my stock of peltry by barter. Mr. Shaw's men rested at my house one night, and the next morning set off for Manontoye.

113[76] Indian Manner of going to War, &c.

Lake Manontoye, where Mr. Shaw wintered, is not so large as Lac Eturgeon: it abounds with excellent fish and wild fowl; and oats, rice, and cranberries, grow spontaneously in the swamps. There are very few islands on it. There are about three hundred of the Chippeway nation who resort to it; they are very wild, and delight in war, which they sometimes wage against the Sioux, on the Mississippi; and they are frequently absent from their families fifteen months, scarce ever returning without a prisoner or a scalp.[61]

It is very strange that the thirst of blood should stimulate the human mind to traverse such an amazing extent of country, suffering inexpressible hardships, and uncertain of success, to gratify a passion, which none but an infernal spirit could suggest; and when success has crowned his labours, that he should return with inconceivable satisfaction, and relate the transactions of his journey, with the greatest exultation, smiling at the relation of agonies which he alone occasioned. The most dreadful acts of a maniac cannot exceed such cruelty: happy those, who enjoy the benefits of society, whose civilization, and whose laws protect them from such detestable outrages.

Previous to their going to war, the head chief calls a council, and each chief has a belt of wampum, and a war pipe: the belt to remind [77] them of former transactions relative to the nation they intend to commence hostilities against, and the pipe to smoke at the council fire. When 114they have determined to make war, they send the belts and pipes to their enemies; and if a similar compliment is returned, they instantly prepare for blood, with the most steady and determined resolution.

The novel of Emily Montague affords a striking example of this strong propensity for blood, which I shall relate in the author's own words.

“A Jesuit missionary told me a story on this subject, which one cannot hear without horror. An Indian woman with whom he lived on his mission, was feeding her children, when her husband brought in an English prisoner; she immediately cut off his arm, and gave her children the streaming blood to drink. The Jesuit remonstrated on the cruelty of the action; on which, looking sternly at him—I would have them warriors, said she, and therefore feed them with the food of men.”

When I was at Cataraqui, the capital of the Loyalist settlements in Canada, a party of Mohawks and Messesawgers accidentally met, and having bartered their skins and peltry with the traders, sat themselves down to drink the rum their merchandize had produced. As the liquor began to operate, their imaginations suggested to them that they were of different nations, and as the Mohawks always claimed a superiority, intoxication made them proud: at last a dispute arose, and a Messesawger Indian was killed, and his heart taken out, which the [78] Mohawks intended to have broiled, but they were prevented by a gentleman who accidentally passed by their hut, and prevailed upon them to give it up.

It seems to be the constant attention both of the male and female part of the Indians to instil ideas of heroism into the minds of the rising generation, and these impressions they carry far beyond the line of reason or of 115justice. Is it then surprising that every action of their lives should tend to satisfy their thirst for revenging offences committed against them, and that these sentiments should operate so powerfully in directing their future conduct? There is, nevertheless, one exception to these observations—their conduct to traders, who are obliged on some occasions, when intoxication runs high, to beat them very soundly;—

to their credit, in these instances, I must confess I never knew them to resent this severity when sober. The only remark they have made has been—"Friend, you beat me very severely last night—but I do not mind, I suppose I deserved it—it was the liquor made me offend." Or if they betray any dissatisfaction, one glass of rum will reconcile all differences. With regard to severity when they are perfectly sober, I am convinced it would be highly dangerous, and should be cautiously avoided.

But although they often express these blood-thirsty sentiments, and too frequently put them in execution, yet there are occasions when they exercise both temper and reason.

When I was at Pimistiscotyan Landing, on Lake Ontario, I had a large dog, to protect myself and property; an Indian came in rather [79] in liquor to ask for rum, and probably might strike the animal; the dog instantly seized him by the calf of the leg, and wounded him dreadfully. He returned to his hut, and made no complaint till the next morning, when he desired to speak with me: I went to him, and he told me how the dog had used him, saying, he hoped I would give him a pair of leggons, to supply those which the dog had torn; but that with regard to his leg, he did not trouble himself much about that, as he knew it would soon be well. I immediately granted his request, and added a bottle of rum, with which he seemed well pleased, and I heard no more of it.

But to return to the subject of going to war. The women and children sometimes go forward in their canoes singing the war songs, and encamp every evening at sunset, having a great dislike to travelling in the dark. Forty-eight young warriors are placed, in four divisions, to keep guard at night, armed with guns, bows and arrows, and some scotté wigwas, or fire bark, to light in case of sudden surprise.

This bark is taken from the birch tree, and being properly dried, is used by the Indians to light them to spear fish: it is fixed on a stick about seven feet long, and either put at the head of the canoe, or carried by the person who attends upon the man that spears, and whose business it is also to steer the canoe.

At day break the Indians depart, and pursue their journey regardless of the weather, till they arrive in the enemy's country, when the utmost precaution is adopted that it is possible for human invention to suggest.

[80] When war is made against the Mississippi Indians, they endeavour to kill the men and women, and bring away the children to dispose of to the traders, who send them down to Montreal for servants. The boys are not so much to be depended upon as the girls, being more stubborn, and naturally disdaining the idea of slavery; they are also full of pride and resentment, and will not hesitate to kill their masters in order to gratify their revenge for a supposed injury. The girls are more docile, and assimilate much sooner with the manners of civilization. Being unaccustomed to domestic life, they are at first sick and unhealthy; but the change soon becomes familiar to them, and they then prefer it to the uncultivated manner of living in which they were brought up.[62]

A few days after my return to Lac la Mort, a band of Savages arrived from the Red Lake, called by the Indians, Misqui Sakiegan, and some from Lake Shabeechevan, or the Weed Lake, about five days march beyond Lake Manontoye. Red Lake is so called on account of a remarkable circumstance which happened to two famous warriors of the Chippeway nation, who were hunting by the lake side, and as they were looking out for game, perceived at some distance an enormous beast, that appeared much larger than any animal they had ever seen; his pace was slow and heavy, and he kept constantly by the water side. They followed him as close as they thought prudent, determined at all hazards to use their best endeavours to kill him. As they approached, they had a clearer view, and discovered that his body was covered with something like moss; this increased their surprise, and after consulting together, they continued advancing towards the beast, and fired large shot, without appearing to make any impression. They [81] fired again with as little effect as before; then retreated some distance, sat down and sung their war songs, addressing themselves to the Master of Life, and desiring his assistance to enable them to conquer it, as they believed it to be the Matchee Mannitoo, or bad spirit, in the shape of this monster. They then got up and pursued him, both firing at the same time: the shot proved successful, 118and caused the animal to turn round, which induced them to keep up their fire till the beast jumped into the water, and they lost sight of him. From the circumstance of his blood dyeing the water red, this lake has ever since been called the Red Lake.

Fish is caught here in great abundance, and wild rice grows in very great plenty in the swamps. The country likewise abounds with all sorts of animals for hunting. There are several rivers and falls of water on the northwest part. The Indians are very fond of fishing and hunting here during the winter season, as they are generally very successful even in the most severe weather. From Red Lake to Lake le Sel, or Salt Lake, by the Indian accounts, there are fourteen short portages, and twenty-two creeks. Lake le Sel is very small, and the water shallow and muddy. It does not exceed three miles in length. There are few fish except eels, cat fish, and pike; but it abounds with musquashes and wild fowl. From this lake to Lake Caribou, or Rein deer Lake, is eight days march across five creeks and three portages.

Lake Caribou, or, in the Indian language, Ateeque, is about thirty miles long, with several small islands, resembling the Mille Isles, in the River St. Laurence, above Montreal. The water is deep and clear, [82] and the bottom hard. It abounds with large trout, white fish, pickerill, pike, and sturgeon. It is surrounded by a chain of high mountains. Some years ago a French trader settled here, but of late it has been deserted. The Indians reckon it ten days march to Lake Schabeechevan, across thirteen portages, and as many creeks; but as I wintered here the following year, though I went to it by a different track, I shall not describe it till I give an account of the occurrences of that time. From Lake Schabeechevan to 119 Lake Arbitibis are three small lakes, eight creeks, and five portages. Lake Arbitibis is very large, and the surrounding land rocky and mountainous. This Lake furnishes the Indians with fish and wild fowl. The aquatic race abound in this part of the world, doubtless so appointed for the support of the numerous tribes of Savages, who are obliged to resort to the lakes for food. At the northern extremity of this Lake is a large fall of water, which flows from a river whose current is rapid for about twenty miles. On this river there are also dangerous rapids; the land upon its banks is low, and the beach sandy. From Lake Arbitibis to Crow's Nest Lake, called by the Indians, Cark Cark Sakiegan, is a short distance. The utmost circumference of Crow's Nest Lake scarcely exceeds two leagues, and is only remarkable for a small island in the middle, with about forty high palm trees, where the crows build their nests, which is called Cark Cark Minnesey. The fish in this Lake are very indifferent, being mostly of the sword-fish kind, which the Indians seldom eat. From this Lake is a long portage, and about half way a high mountain. At the end of the carrying place is a river called Cark Cark Seepi, or Crows' River, which runs with a strong current for about thirty miles, from Neeshshemaince Sakiegan, or the Lake of the Two Sisters; so called from the meeting of two currents, which form one grand discharge into [83] the lake. The Hudson's Bay Indians hunt here with great success. At the end is a carrying place about a quarter of a mile long, that leads to a remarkably narrow river, which runs with a strong

current for about fifty leagues: the land on each side being very high, makes the navigation dark. The Indians in going up this river travel as light as possible, to enable them to combat the strong current. 120The Hudson's Bay Company are supplied with a considerable quantity of peltry from this river.

As the description of this country, hitherto so little explored, is a principal part of what I intended in this publication, I have described it either from my own knowledge, or the most authentic information I was able to procure from the Savages. In this respect I have followed Carver, who on his arrival at the grand portage, met a large party of Killistinoe and Assinipoil Indians, from whom he received accounts of several lakes and rivers, which he describes agreeable to the information he obtained.

It is necessary to observe, that though the Indians are very expert in delineating countries upon bark, with wood coal mixed with bears' grease, and which even the women do with great precision, the length of a day's march is very uncertain, and consequently cannot afford any geographical information. This remark, I trust, will be found to want no farther proof than the consideration that their drafts consist principally of lakes and rivers, as they seldom travel much by land; and when their track over land is described, it is perhaps only a short portage which they cross, in order again to pursue their journey on their favourite element. But as few persons will probably read this account [84] with a view of going into this country, the description I have been able to give will be sufficient for the generality of my readers. I lament exceedingly my inability to make this work more perfect, but trust that it will be found highly useful to those whose avocations may induce them to have recourse to it for information and guidance in commercial pursuits. If an Indian goes with the stream, or against it, from sunrise to sunset, it is called a day's march. This uncertainty makes it very difficult for any one who travels as a 121trader to ascertain any thing more than the Indian distance from one lake to another. As Mr. Carver, in his map, says that the branches which run from Rivière St. Louis, at the end of West Bay, in Lake Superior, are but little known, I can with equal propriety observe that those from Lake Alemipigon, or Nipegon, both east and west, are very difficult to describe geographically. The known candour of my countrymen, will, I am persuaded, pardon any errors of this sort, as I can assure them I have exerted my best endeavours to render the description of places, with respect to distances and situation, as clear as possible, which the chart I hope will more fully explain.[63]

122[85] Further Transactions with the Indians; their Superstition, Jealousy, &c.

Having given an account of the different lakes, rivers, &c. from Lac la Mort, I shall continue the narrative from my return from Lake Manontoye, where I relieved Mr. Shaw.

A few days after, another band of Savages arrived with skins, furs, and some provisions; they stayed with me two days, making merry with what rum I could spare them, without doing any mischief, and departed at last very peaceably. On the twenty-third of February another band came in, consisting of about eighty, men, women, and children, who brought dried meats, oats, bears' grease, and eight packs of beaver, which I purchased, giving them rum, as usual, with which they got intoxicated. In this frolic one woman was killed, and a boy terribly burnt. On the third day they departed, well pleased with their reception, leaving us plenty of provisions. The weather being more moderate, I sent my men to the lake to look after the nets, which had been under the ice a considerable time, the severity of the season not having allowed us to examine them for near a month, when, to our great mortification they were found almost rotten, and not a single fish; but as one of the Canadians could make nets as well as myself, we repaired the damage; and caught plenty of fish to support us till April.

The severity of the season was sensibly felt by Mr. James Clark, belonging to the same company, who had five men starved at Lake Savan, [86] a bad lake for fish, about three hundred and fifty miles from my wintering 123ground;[64] the Indians being obliged to hunt so far back in the woods that they could not give him any assistance; and from the concurrent accounts of the traders in the northwest, as well as from the Savages who resorted to my house, it was the hardest winter they ever remembered.

About this time a large band of Chippeways arrived, traded with me for their hunt, and finished their frolic in a peaceable manner. While this band was with me, a curious circumstance occurred, which I shall relate.

One part of the religious superstition of the Savages, consists in each of them having his totam, or favorite spirit, which he believes watches over him. This totam they conceive assumes the shape of some beast or other, and therefore they never kill, hunt, or eat the animal whose form they think this totam bears.

The evening previous to the departure of the band, one of them, whose totam was a bear, dreamed that if he would go to a piece of swampy ground, at the foot of a high mountain, about five days march from my wigwaum, he would see a large herd of elks, moose, and other animals; but that he must be accompanied by at least ten good hunters. When he awoke he acquainted the band with his dream, and desired them to go with him: they all refused, saying it was out of their way, and that their hunting grounds were nearer. The Indian having a superstitious reverence for his dream (which ignorance, and the prevalence of example among the Savages, carries to a great height), thinking himself [87] obliged to do so, as his companions had refused to go with him, went alone, 124and coming near the spot, saw the animals he dreamed of; he instantly fired, and killed a bear. Shocked at the transaction, and dreading the displeasure of the Master of Life, whom he conceived he had highly offended, he fell down, and lay senseless for some time: recovering from his state of insensibility, he got up, and was making the best of his way to my house, when he was met in the road by another large bear, who pulled him down, and scratched his face. The Indian relating this event at his return, added, in the simplicity of his nature, that the bear asked him what could induce him to kill his totam; to which he replied, that he did not know he was among the animals when he fired at the herd; that he was very sorry for the misfortune, and hoped he would have pity on him: that the bear suffered him to depart, told him to be more cautious in future, and acquaint all the Indians with the circumstance, that their totams might be safe, and the Master of Life not angry with them. As he entered my house, he looked at me very earnestly, and pronounced these words; “Amik, hunjey ta Kitchee Annascartisey nin, O Totam, cawwicka nee wee geossay sannegat debwoye:”—or, “Beaver, my faith is lost, my totam is angry, I shall never be able to hunt any more.”

This idea of destiny, or, if I may be allowed the phrase, “totamism,”[65] however strange, is not confined to the Savages; many instances might be adduced from history, 125to prove how strong these impressions have been on minds above the vulgar and unlearned. To instance one, in the history of the private life of Louis the XV. translated by Justamond, among some particulars of the life of the famous Samuel Bernard, the Jew banker, of the court of France, he says, that he was superstitious [88] as the people of his nation are, and had a black hen, to which he thought his destiny was attached; he had the greatest care taken of her, and the loss of this fowl was, in fact, the period of his own existence, in January, 1739.

Dreams are particularly attended to by the Indians, and sometimes they make an artful use of the veneration that is paid to them, by which they carry a point they have in view: I shall relate an instance for the satisfaction of the reader.

Sir William Johnson, sitting in council with a party of Mohawks, the head chief told him, he had dreamed last night, that he had given him a fine laced coat, and he believed it was the same he then wore; Sir William smiled, and asked the chief if he really dreamed it; the Indian immediately answered in the affirmative: Well then, says Sir William, you must have it; and instantly pulled it off, and desiring the chief to strip himself, put on him the fine coat. The Indian was highly delighted, and when the council broke up, departed in great good humour, crying out, who-ah! which is an expression of great satisfaction among them.

The next council which was held, Sir William told the chief that he was not accustomed to dream, but that since he met him at the council, he had dreamed a very surprising dream; the Indian wished to know it; Sir William, with some hesitation, told him he had dreamed that he had given him a tract of land on the Mohawk River to build a house on, and make a settlement, extending about nine miles in length along the banks: the chief smiled, and looking very cheerfully at Sir William, [89] told him, if he really dreamed it he should have it; but that he would never dream again with him, for he had only got a laced coat, whereas Sir William was now entitled to a large bed, on which his ancestors had frequently slept. Sir William took possession of the land by virtue of an Indian deed signed by the chiefs, and gave them some rum to finish the business.[66] It is now a considerable estate, but since the war the Americans have deprived him of it, with all the buildings, &c. which are very valuable. It lies on the opposite shore to the German Flats, but the land is by no means equal in goodness with the soil there. Perhaps no part of America produces land better calculated for cultivation than the German Flats.

During the American war, the best Loyalist troops were collected from the Mohawk River, and it was agreed on all hands that for steadiness, bravery and allegiance, they were not to be excelled. Government has done its utmost to reward many of them for their services, by giving them land in Canada and Nova Scotia; and to those whom poverty obliged to solicit them, implements of husbandry. They are now in a very flourishing state, and there is no doubt but they will prove valuable friends and supporters of Great Britain on any future emergency.

During the severe weather, I had a narrow escape from a contrivance of the Indian who was occasionally with me, and whom I employed in hunting, and making marten traps: this was occasioned by jealousy, on account of his wife, who was a pretty young Squaw, of the Rat nation, and whom he suspected of infidelity.

[90] Being short of provisions, and having only one faithful Canadian in the house, except the Indian and his wife, I desired him to make a number of marten traps, and set them in two different roads, called a fork. Having finished about two hundred, and set them in the woods, baited with fish heads, which these animals are very fond of, he returned, and I gave him some rum for his trouble. Every day, for a considerable time, he went regularly to examine them, and when successful, was always rewarded to his satisfaction. Having been unfortunate several days, I charged him with doing other business, instead of examining the traps, to which he made no reply. I communicated my suspicions to my man, and desired him to watch the Savage. The next day the Canadian discovered him in the woods dressing some partridges:[67] when he returned home in the evening he asked for rum, which I refused, telling him he did not deserve any. This answer displeased him; and looking earnestly at me, he replied, that I did not use him well; for though he had been unsuccessful with his traps, his trouble was the same; and that he generally found them out of order, which obliged him to set them right, and employed him the whole day. This excuse did not make any alteration in my conduct, and I told him the weather was too bad to get at any rum. He then began to imagine that I suspected him, and knew of his laziness, and immediately opened his mind, telling me very frankly that 128he was jealous of me; and that his reason for not going to examine the marten traps, was to prevent any communication between me and his wife, which, had he been far distant from home, might have been easily effected; and for this reason he kept near the house to watch her, knowing that she was fond of me; but that if I would give him some rum, to drive away the bad spirit from his heart, he would endeavour to forget the injury I had done him.

[91] Judging it prudent to remove his suspicions, I gave him two gallons of rum, a carrot of tobacco, a shirt, a pair of leggins, a scalping knife, &c. and several articles to his wife. Having received the presents, he called her to drink with him, and thank the trader with a cheerful heart for his great kindness. When they were a little merry he began to sing, and I heard him repeat these words: "Mornooch Amik kee zargetoone mentimoyamish;" or, "I do not care though the Beaver loves my wife." This did not please me, as I knew his jealousy would increase in proportion to the quantity of liquor he drank. However, I used the utmost precaution, securing his weapons to prevent his doing me any injury. His wife hearing him

repeat the words so frequently, began to be angry, and pulled his hair and scratched his face. I thought this a favourable opportunity to express my dislike, and told him he was a fool to be jealous; that I gave him the rum to drive away the bad spirit, but it had a contrary effect; that I never wanted any thing of his wife but to make or mend snow shoes, and always paid her for her trouble. Yes, cries the wife, he is a fool, Beaver, and I will beat him; which she instantly did, and cut his head with a glass bottle. I then interfered, and parted them.

The moment I was gone, he began the old song, and ¹²⁹continued singing till he was sober; when getting up, he came to me and said, "Beaver, I have seen the bad spirit in my dream, who told me that the trader had robbed me." Irritated at the expression, I told him his lips never spoke truth, and that he had no sense; and thinking it right to suppress this humour, beat him very severely. When he had recovered his reason, he said to me, "Beaver, you have sense, though you have spotted my carcass." I then remonstrated with him on the great [92] folly of being jealous; but he was sullen, and made no reply. He then called his wife, but she being asleep did not hear him; he called a second time, and asked for his gun, tomahawk, and scalping knife; but not receiving any answer, he was very angry, and said to me, "Beaver, I will throw away my body;" to which I did not think it prudent to make any reply. He then laid himself down on the ground, and called his wife a third time. She came to him, and observing displeasure in his countenance, told him not to be angry with the Beaver, for he was a great warrior, and always opened his heart to them. He ordered her to bring him a bark bowl full of water, and set it down carefully between the Beaver's legs. Whilst she was gone for the water, he said to me, "Come here, Beaver, and I will shew you that I have nothing sweet on my lips, but will speak the truth." The wife returned and placed the bowl of water as her husband directed; when it had stood some time he said, "Beaver, put your finger in the water, and let it remain till I tell you to take it out." I obeyed him with the utmost cheerfulness, and in a few minutes, by his desire, withdrew it. He then said, "Beaver, you know that a husband is so called because he is the master of weakness, and for that reason he should protect his wife; and at the same time, you, as a trader, ¹³⁰should not injure me: but that I may not accuse you unjustly, I will try you by my own thoughts. Beaver, look at my wife, and look at the water, and tell me where you put your finger; if you cannot tell, you have certainly robbed me." I then put in my finger again, and pointed out the place. "No;" said he, looking earnestly at me and his wife, "as you cannot be certain that it is the exact place where you first put in your finger, neither can I be certain that you have robbed me; though I as much believe it, as you do that the place you pointed out was the exact spot." I [93] confessed myself surprised at his disbelief; but not willing to incense him, I told him I was sorry he should imagine me capable of such wickedness as to be guilty of injuring

him, for my mind was as calm as the water in an undisturbed state; and after giving him a few presents, sent them away, injoining him to use his wife well, as she was perfectly innocent. As they departed, he said to me smiling, "Beaver, you must get somebody else to look after your marten traps."

Adultery among the northern Savages is generally punished in a summary way by the husband, who either beats his wife very severely, or bites off her nose. It is extremely dangerous for a trader to be suspected, for when the husband is intoxicated, his jealousy rises into madness; and revenge, whether the party suspected be innocent or guilty, is continually to be expected. When the mind of an Indian is once affected, his passion increases in proportion to the quantity of rum which he drinks, though he has the art to conceal it when he is sober. It is the baneful effects of rum which puts every jealous thought in motion, and then it knows no bounds, till intoxication completely overpowers him, or returning sobriety restores his lost reason.

131Early in the month of April, I received a letter from Monsieur Jaques Santeron at Lake Schabeechevan, in the same employ as myself, to inform me that he was tired of being a servant, and thinking his labours not sufficiently rewarded, had determined to make a grand coup, having a number of fine packs which he purposed selling to the Hudson's Bay Company: that he should leave his wintering ground next morning with four birch canoes, and would write further particulars on bark, which he should nail against one of the crooked trees at the foot of [94] the Grand Rapid, in case I should be disposed to come that way, and concluded with great gaieté de cœur, wishing me and all my friends very well.

I was greatly surprised on receiving this unpleasant intelligence, and particularly as I had never heard of his integrity being impeached in the smallest degree; and I was disappointed, as I expected him to pass my wintering ground on his return to Pays Plat.

Conceiving it my duty to exert my best endeavours to prevent the loss of so much property to my employers, I engaged Kesconeek the chief, and twenty Savages, under promise of being satisfied for their trouble, to conduct me to the crooked trees. We went off with the utmost expedition, and in a few days arrived at the spot, where I saw the piece of bark, as he described, and the following words written with charcoal, "Adieu, mon cher ami, je prends mon départ avec courage, et j'attends une bonne vente pour ma pelleterie. De bon

cœur je vous souhaite la prospérité; faites mes complimens à tous mes amis—au revoir mon cher companion.”

Having perused it, and explained it to the chief; he said he was a bad spirit, and that as he had been gone six days before our arrival, it would be impossible to overtake him, as he could not be far from the entrance of the North River, leading to Hudson’s Bay, and if I pursued him, I should not get back in time to trade with the Indians for their great hunt. We therefore returned, after a fruitless expedition, extremely mortified at the disappointment, as I was very sensible he would never return to Canada, to make satisfaction to his employers.

[95] Soon after my return the grand band came in with all their winter’s hunt, which they call Kitchee Artawway. They consisted of about thirty families, of twenty in each. He who has most wives is considered the best hunter, being obliged to provide for their maintenance by his own industry. The Indians laugh at the Europeans for having only one wife, and that for life, as they conceive the good spirit formed them to be happy, and not to continue together unless their tempers and dispositions were congenial.

Having bartered for their skins and furs, they asked for rum; I told them I had only one small keg left, which I would give them at their departure, which satisfied them: and when they were ready to embark, I ordered a Canadian to put it into the chief’s canoe.

Having disposed of all my merchandise except a few articles, and a small quantity of rum, to barter with any Indians I might happen to meet with in my return to Pays Plat, we baled up our peltry, and on the 23d of May left Lac la Mort, with four small birch canoes richly laden with the skins of beavers, otters, martens, minx, loup serviers, beaver eaters, foxes, bears, &c.[68]

Before I proceed to relate the particulars of my voyage, I shall mention the Indian manner of killing the white bear and the buffalo. The large white bear, commonly called the grisly bear,[69] is a very dangerous animal; when the Indians hunt it they generally go six or eight in a band; the instant they see one, they endeavour to surround it, by forming a large circle: if it is on the march they fire at it;—but it is most frequently discovered in the winter

season sucking its paws; in [96] that case they approach nearer, and form a double row for the animal to run between. One of the party is then sent out, who fires at the bear and generally wounds it: this rouses it to pursue the Indian, who runs between the ranks, and the rest of the band fire and soon dispatch it.

The buffalo I need not describe; it is well known to be a remarkably strong animal; the Indians say its head is bullet proof, and therefore they always fire at the body, endeavouring to hit the heart. When they are in pursuit of this animal they make up small huts of snow in different places, for near a mile in length on each side of the road; in each of these huts an Indian stands with a bow and arrow, to shoot at it as it passes, preferring that mode to powder and ball, as it does not alarm the rest of the herd. The snow prevents the buffalo from smelling the Indians, though their scent is very strong and quick. The instant the animal drops they tomahawk it.

On the 2d of July we arrived at Portage Plain, so called on account of its being a barren rock, near a mile long, joining to Lake Alemipigon: it was sunset when we encamped. Besides the sixteen Canadians, our party was increased considerably by about twenty of the Sturgeon 134 and Nipigon Indians, who accompanied us according to the usual custom of following the trader to assist at the carrying places. The day previous to our departure some traders overtook us, and encamped also. They informed us of a band of Indians who were enemies to the Nipegons being near at hand, and desired me to acquaint the Savages with it. Before their arrival the Sturgeon Indians left us, and the other band would fain have quitted the ground; but upon telling them I wanted [97] their assistance on my journey, they agreed to stay, though I thought very reluctantly.

We soon discovered several canoes, and in about half an hour the Indians landed. They were of the nation of the Wasses, and always at war with our Savages.[70] Being a select people, they seldom associate with other tribes, and are continually on the hunt, only making their appearance in spring and autumn. We received them very cordially, and after the usual forms of salutation, made mutual presents to each other: they told me they had heard of me by some Indians at Lac la Mort, and were desirous of seeing me before my return to Michillimakinac, or in their language Tecodondoraghie.

I soon perceived the uneasiness of my Indians, and was careful to keep them at some distance from each other; but all my precaution was ineffectual, and before my departure a most dreadful catastrophe was the consequence of their mutual hatred.

135Our Indians having made up huts, began to sing their medicine songs to induce the Wasses to partake of a feast which they said they intended to make, with a view of preventing any dispute with them; but knowing that the Nipegons had no provisions but what I found them, I suspected their intentions were not so pacific as they pretended: this induced me to ask a boy belonging to the band, why they pretended to make a feast, without having any provision to do it; he replied, that the Wasses had made them a present of dried meat, and with this and some huckle berries they had saved, they intended to make their visitants merry. This answer confirmed my suspicions, as no feast is [98] ever made, where friendship is intended, without inviting the trader; and as no notice was sent me, I dreaded the evil consequence of their meeting.

Deliberating with myself on the unpleasant prospect, and considering how to act to prevent mischief, I was interrupted in my meditations by a Savage (Ayarbee, or the big man), who came to give me intelligence of an intended plan to destroy the Nipegon Indians, and which was communicated to him by an old woman who belonged to the band of Wasses.

In about an hour the Nipegon huts were in order to receive their intended guests, who were encamped in a hollow, surrounded with cedar trees and bushes, close to the lake side. The Nipegons being determined to counteract the designs of their deceitful visitors, and punish their intended perfidy, made holes in the bark of their huts, in which they placed their guns, loaded with swan shot. Each man taking his station; the Wasses, to the number of eighteen, ascended the hill, and were coming prepared to partake of the feast, with knives and 136wooden bowls, intending to overpower the Nipegons on a given signal; but they were fatally disappointed, for when they got within thirty yards of the Nipegon huts, they were fired at, and all the band, except a girl about fourteen years of age, killed on the spot; she was dangerously wounded, but advanced with a gun, which she snatched from an Indian who was preparing to dispatch her, and shot Ayarbee through the head, and was herself soon after tomahawked and scalped by a Nipegon boy about the same age, who at such an early period of life displayed all that ferocity which marks the most determined chief.

[99] Thus was treachery rewarded: and though in my heart I could not but approve of the conduct of the Nipegon Indians, I was afraid of trusting to them, and had resolved on taking my leave of them, when the chief came up and informed me, he was very sorry that his band could not accompany me any farther, for being afraid of the resentment of the nation of the Wasses, when they came to hear of the transaction, notwithstanding they had done it in their own defence, they had determined to depart; and soon after pushed off their canoes, and left me, a circumstance which pleased me exceedingly. The next day a party of Indians met us, to whom I related the disaster. They were very much shocked, and said the Nipegon Savages might repent their rash conduct, though at the same time they acknowledged them right in guarding against the designs of the Wasses. They asked me if I had got their packs, as they assured me they had made a good hunt, and had rich peltry. This information vexed me exceedingly, as I should certainly have increased my cargo had not the affair happened, and likewise have given more satisfaction to my employers, though I had already a large quantity of goods, and had every reason to be pleased with my success. The Nipegons made up fourteen bales of dried meat, which they took with them; but the furs and skins were hidden in the woods, and never afterwards found that I heard of.

We continued our journey to Lac Eturgeon, where soon after our landing, we killed a great many wild fowl, and caught plenty of fish. Here we met about fifty of the Hawoyzask or Rat Nation Indians,[71] with whom I made a small barter, chiefly with rum, having disposed of all my Indian goods.

[100] Our journey was retarded for some time in order to gratify my curiosity. A young Indian girl fell sick, and the chief desired me to stay to see the wonderful effects of their medicines, as she was very bad, and without immediate assistance, he said, must soon change her climate. The physician who attended her said, that the Matchee Mannitoo, or bad spirit, had put the bear's claws into her, and his medicines would remove them. A hut was prepared, and the girl stripped to her matcheecoaty or under petticoat; she was then painted with vermilion, and daubed over with soot and bears' grease, and profusely sweated, which soon relieved her pain. During the operation, the physician addressed himself to the Master of Life, begging his assistance, and thanking him for giving knowledge to restore health: then giving her a decoction of roots, he made a perfect cure. I could not help admiring his skill and manner of proceeding, though I attributed her recovery solely to the plentiful perspiration she underwent.[72]

Previous to our departure, one of their women was delivered of a fine boy, and I was highly delighted with the mother's tenderness, as the infant sucked the milk, which in their language is called tootooshonarbo, or the sap of the human breast, an expression which struck me forcibly. The husband was also very attentive, and performed the part of an affectionate parent, which induced me to give him some rum to cheer his heart, and drink my health. He seemed pleased with the present, and addressing himself to the Great Spirit, thanked him for the safe delivery of his mentimoye:—then looking very earnestly at me, told me how much he was indebted to me for the comfort that I had afforded him, and that he was sure that I was a brave warrior, for my generosity to him and his wife, when they so much wanted assistance. When the young [101] warrior cried, he observed, that he wished to be grateful to me for my attention to his parents, and that it was only the echo of his breath, (meaning his voice) to praise the goodness of the Saggonash, or Englishman. As I got into my canoe, he said, "Beaver, be strong, you will always have a public road among the Nipegon Indians, therefore return as soon as you can; in the mean time, I shall take care to acquaint all the Indians with your goodness, and I hope when we see you again, we shall have had a good hunt, and be able to give you furs and skins to repay your kindness." I told him I always loved the Indians, that I was adopted by the Chippeways, and considered myself as one of their tribe; that I would 139return as soon as possible with plenty of goods for their families; that my heart was melted by his regard for me, and giving him and his wife each a parting glass of the strong water, took my leave, and pursued my journey.

We arrived at Pays Plat on the 10th of August, where I met some brother traders, who had been in different parts of the inlands, particularly the Northwest. Here we waited for fresh goods from our employers, and enjoyed ourselves with the remains of our different provisions, which we threw into a common stock, and made ourselves merry with the scanty pittance, recounting our several adventures: but none of them had suffered the difficulties I had experienced, except Mr. Shaw, whom I happily relieved at Lake Manontoye; the rest of the traders having wintered very remote from me, by the way of the Grand Portage.

Soon after our arrival, our employers sent their agents with a fresh assortment of merchandize and provisions, which rejoiced us exceedingly, [102] having been a considerable time without corn or grease, and absent from Michillimakinac about fourteen months. I delivered my cargo of furs, consisting of about one hundred and forty packs, in good condition,[73] and loaded the canoes with the fresh goods; then taking leave of my companions, prepared for my departure for the Inlands, to winter another year among the

Nipegon Savages. But before I begin to relate my second adventure, I cannot forbear making some observations on the hardships attending an Indian life, particularly as an interpreter and trader.

My salary was about one hundred and fifty pounds per 140annum, which I certainly deserved, considering the knowledge I had of the Chippeway language.

I was sent into the Inlands with only corn and hard grease, without any other provisions I could rely on; for as to fish and other animal food, the former in a great measure depends on the season, the latter on the arrival of Savages; and though in general I was successful in aquatic pursuits, and received frequent supplies from the Indians, it was a precarious mode of subsistence, and at Lac la Mort I suffered great hardships.

I had sixteen men, and an Indian and his wife occasionally with me, to feed and govern, and on the continuance of their health my existence in a great measure depended. As it was my constant duty to be in the way, in case of the arrival of Savages, being the only one who could talk their language, I had few opportunities of hunting, neither could I go far abroad to examine whether the Canadians did their duty or not: I [103] was therefore always full of anxiety, and rejoiced when the spring returned to set me free.

The constant attention necessary in taking care of the goods to prevent depredations, the continual fears and apprehensions of being plundered by a set of intoxicated beings; always liable to insults, without daring to resent them; and when I had bartered all my merchandize, and made a successful trip—feeling a painful solicitude till the fruits of my labours were safely delivered to my employers. Upon the whole, perhaps no situation can be more distressing, and it has often filled my mind with surprise when I reflected on the engagement I entered into, which consumed the prime of my days in a traffic, the dangers and fatigues of which scarce any salary could compensate. I believe nothing but the flattering idea 141of thinking myself superior to others as an interpreter, prompted me to continue in a station so fatiguing to support, and so difficult to execute; and I cannot but conclude with this observation:—That however censurable a man may be for indulging even this degree of pride, the liberal mind will easily pardon the presumption, as they know he alone is the sufferer; and as self-opinion governs the pursuits of mankind, the individual who is most influenced by it, must stand or fall by the consequences.

SECOND EXPEDITION

[104] Proceed to winter again among the Nipegon Indians;—Design of an Indian to plunder us;—unfortunate Accident happens to an Indian Chief;—narrowly escape being assassinated by an Indian Straggler; Murder of Joseph la Forme, a Trader.

On the 15th of August I left Pays Plat, with four birch canoes, and the same men who wintered with me at Lac la Mort, and arrived at Rivière la Pique, which runs into Lake Superior: this river is very crooked for about seven miles, and extremely deep; it abounds with fish, particularly pike, from which it takes its name.[74] On our landing, we found a large band of Chippeways, and some of the Rat nation, who immediately prepared a feast for us of dried meat, fish, &c. Among them was an Indian named Ogashy, or the horse; he was reckoned, even by his own tribe, a bad Indian, which put me on my guard during my encampment there. I traded for their skins and furs, and gave them some rum, with which they had a frolic, which lasted for three days and nights; on this occasion five men were killed, and one woman dreadfully burnt. When the fumes of the liquor had evaporated, they began, as usual, to reflect on the folly of their conduct, and all except Ogashy expressed great concern; he seemed rather to be pleased at the mischief which had happened, and before my departure, I was informed that he intended to destroy me, and plunder the property. To frustrate his villainous intention, I kept him in good humour, and made [105] him sleep in my hut, 143a compliment he seemed highly pleased with, and which I believe for the time diverted him from his purpose; and though by no means fond of his company, I judged it most prudent to have my enemy in sight. In the morning I gave him a glass of rum, and promised him a two-gallon keg to carry off the ground, which, as the Indians express themselves, drove the bad spirit from his heart. When my men had prepared every thing for embarkation, I gave the chief of the band the liquor, and a single bottle of rum more than I promised to Ogashy, unknown to the rest, in which I had infused a considerable quantity of laudanum. Unsuspicious of what I had done, he put the bottle to his mouth, and shaking me by the hand, said to me, “Kee talinimanco negee,” or, “your health, friend,” and immediately took a hearty draught which soon stupified and lulled him into a profound sleep, in which, I was afterwards informed, he remained twelve hours, depriving him of the power of doing harm, and that soon after, an Indian who had an antipathy against him, and only sought an opportunity of gratifying his resentment, tomahawked him. His eldest son burnt him, and fixed his bones on a high pole, as he was the head chief of the tribe.

We proceeded on our voyage, and arrived at a short carrying place, called Portage la Rame, where we encamped for nine days, being wind bound; here we found a number of Indians in the same situation.

As soon as Lake Superior was passable with safety, we continued our journey through strong and dangerous rapids, which kept us continually in the water, and very sensibly affected our limbs; on these occasions, [106] where great exertion is necessary, all distinction is laid aside, and it is tel maitre, tel valet, the bourgeois must 144work as hard as the engagés, to encourage them to do their duty with more alacrity, and avoid all cause of complaint.

The wind proving favourable, we proceeded to Cranberry Lake, so called from the great quantity of cranberries growing in the swamps. We stopped here two days to refresh ourselves after the great fatigue we had undergone in struggling against the rapids. Being sufficiently recovered, and having nothing to detain us, we proceeded to a short carrying place called La grande Côte de la Roche, near the entrance of the Nipigon River, which is a high ridge of rocks that must be passed to avoid the great cataract which I mentioned in my former voyage. At this time we had very little animal food, but fortunately killed three large bears in the middle of the portage, which supported us several days, besides which, we reserved some of the meat we had smoked and dried to carry with us.[75]

From La grande Côte de la Roche we proceeded to Lac le Nid au Corbeau, or Crow's Nest Lake, which is about two hundred miles in circumference, and supplied by a number of small rivers; there are also several islands on it which furnish the Indians with great plenty of wild fowl: bears are also found here in abundance, and a surprising number of beaver dams, running in a crooked direction about ten miles. The Chippeways hunt here, and find a great deal of game.

The reader will observe that in the first voyage I gave an account of another Crow's Nest Lake, which is very small, with an island in the [107] middle with high palm 145trees: in such an extent of country it is not surprising that there should be two places of the same name.[76]

During our stay a band of Indians arrived from Lake Arbitibis, who probably were dissatisfied with the trader they dealt with, and intended to go to Michillimakinac, but finding that I understood their language, they bartered with me, and made me a present of meat and fish. An accident happened here which had nearly proved fatal, and which was of infinite service to me ever after, by putting me more on my guard in all transactions with the Savages.

Some of the chiefs being desirous of seeing my Northwest guns, I was obliged to open a case for their inspection; this I did unwillingly, as the weather was fine, and I was extremely anxious to get to the wintering ground before a heavy fall of snow: having shewn them the guns, they loaded four, and laid them down by the cases, intending to try them; during the time they were thus employed I was busy in arranging the goods that had been displaced in getting at them; but as soon as I was at leisure, I took up one of the guns in a careless manner, not knowing it was charged, and snapped the lock, which most unfortunately shot off the ear of one of the chiefs, and I also received some injury by the powder flying in my face, and almost depriving me of sight. The discharge was so instantaneous, and appeared so premeditated that the chief reproached me in very severe terms for the injury I had done him, and threatened revenge; however, I soon convinced him it was an accident, and giving him some presents, he consoled himself for the loss of his ear, which was very large and handsome, and 146without a single break, which made it very valuable in his estimation. It was fortunate [108] I did not kill him, as in all probability we should have been sacrificed to the resentment of the band.

The Indians pride themselves in having large ears, and extended as wide as possible, which renders them liable to be pulled off. It is very common in drunken frolics to lose them; but when they are only torn, they cut them smooth with a knife, and sew the parts together with a needle and deers' sinews, and after sweating in a stove, resume their usual cheerfulness.

The next day we took our leave, and pursued our journey to Shecarke Sakiegan, or the Skunk's Lake, which runs with a strong current. In the fall it abounds with geese and ducks: here we hunted one day, and with good success. The next morning at break of day we embarked, and had favourable weather till we arrived at Lake Schabeechevan, or the Weed Lake. This lake is about one hundred and eighty miles in circumference, and full of small

islands; it abounds with fish, and the swamps are full of wild rice and cranberries; it is about six days march from Lac la Mort.

This lake was an unfortunate situation to my employers last year, when one of their servants, Jaques Santeron, went off with a valuable cargo. On my arrival, I looked out for the house he had erected, but could not discern the least trace of it; probably he was so elated that he made a feu de joye on the prospect of being his own master. At the extremity of this lake is a fall of water, which runs from a river of the same name, and has a direct communication with the waters leading from Fort Albany, within the boundaries of the Hudson's Bay territories: [109] it is about thirty days march across 147nineteen portages and creeks, besides fourteen rapids, which are a great hindrance to the journey. The Indians run down the strong currents without the least fear, and seldom meet with any accident, performing the voyage in one third part of the time they take in ascending, and without any damage to their canoes, which in going against the stream are frequently rendered useless, and they are obliged to make new ones, before they can pursue their voyage; but it is a most convenient circumstance that they are no where at a loss for birch bark, and being also very expert, they will make a canoe in three days sufficiently large to carry three people with necessaries for their support, and room to stow their furs and skins.[77] On this lake there are about one hundred and fifty good hunters, who make a great many packs of beaver, &c. and this was one inducement for settling here, which was increased by the prospect of a plentiful supply of fish, rice, and cranberries, which are winter comforts of too great consequence to be slighted.

Having secured the canoes, and refreshed my men with good soup, I left them in charge of the goods, and took two Indians to shew me a convenient place to build a house, which having fixed on, a building was erected, fifty feet long, and twenty feet wide, divided into two separate apartments, one for merchandise, and the other for common use. The rum being concealed in the woods, and every thing properly arranged, we put the fishing tackle in order; and as the lakes began to freeze very fast, I divided my men into two parties, one half to be employed in fishing, the remainder (except one man whom I always kept in the house) in providing fuel for winter. 148In about three weeks a sufficient quantity of wood was piled near the house, and the wood [110] cutters joined the fishing party: they proved very successful, so that our minds were more at ease than in the preceding year, not having the dread of famine.

In about ten days a numerous band of Indians arrived with their fall hunt, none of whom I had ever seen, not having wintered so far inland before. They seemed well pleased to find a trader settled among them, and particularly as I spoke the language; but when I informed them that I was a brother warrior, and shewed the marks of adoption in my flesh, they were highly delighted. The women were immediately ordered to make up huts, and prepare a feast; whilst this was doing the Indians came into my house, one by one, and seating themselves on the floor, began to smoke, and looked very cheerful. When I had given them tobacco and other Indian goods, the old chief, whose name was Mattoyash, or the Earth, took me round the neck, and kissed my cheek, then addressed me in the following words.

“Meegwoitch kitchee mannitoo, kaygait kee zargetoone an Nishinnorbay nogome, shashyyar payshik artawway winnin tercushenan, cawween kitchee morgussey, an Nishinnorbay nogome cawwickar indenendum. Kaygait kitchee mushkowway geosay haguarmissey waybenan matchee oahthy nee zargetoone Saggonash artawway; winnin kaygait hapadgey kitchee morgussey an Nishinnorbay; kaygwotch annaboycassey neennerwind mornooch towwarch nee zargey debwoye kee appay omar, cuppar bebone nepewar appiminiqui omar.”—“I thank the Master of Life for loving us Indians, and sending us this day an English trader, who will open his heart to me and my young men. Take courage, young men, suffer not your 149 hearts to be bound [111] up, and throw away the bad spirit from you: we all love the English traders, for we have heard of their pity to Savages; we believe that they have an open heart, that their veins run clear like the sun. It is true we Indians have but little sense when drunk, but we hope you will not think of this, and if you will stay with us, we will hunt with spirit for you.”

When he had finished his speech they all got up, and taking me by the right hand, conducted me to their hut; immediately on entering, one of the warriors placed me on a large beaver robe which was prepared for me, and put a wampum belt round my neck, singing all the time to the Master of Life, while myself and the chief were eating. When the feast was over, I took two of the Indians to my house, and gave them two kegs of rum, and ten carrots of tobacco, with other articles, for which they gave me all their peltry. They then began to frolic, which continued three days and nights: the only accident which happened was to a little child, whose back was broke by the mother. When they had rested a day after intoxication, I supplied them with plenty of ammunition for their winter's hunt, and they departed perfectly satisfied with their reception. I cannot help relating the method I was obliged to adopt to quiet an old Indian woman, who was more troublesome than the rest, and continually importuned me for liquor.

I infused forty drops of the tincture of cantharides, and the same quantity of laudanum, into a glass of rum, and when she came to me soliciting very earnestly for the strong water, I gave her the dose which was prepared for her: she drank it without hesitation, and being already much intoxicated, it made her stagger. But this did not satisfy her, and [112] she still asked for more; I then repeated the dose, which she also drank, and then fell on the floor. I ordered my Canadian to carry her out of the house, and lay her carefully near her own wigwam, where she remained twelve hours in a deep sleep, to my entire satisfaction. I have always found laudanum extremely useful; in general it may be considered an essential article in the commerce with the Indians, as it proves the only method of overcoming their intoxicated senses, and making the life of a trader more tolerable, by putting a stop to their impertinence.

On the 19th of November a band of about forty Indians came in with a few skins and a great quantity of dried meat, with some bears' grease, which I purchased for a little rum, and advised them to carry it along with them off the ground; they complied with my wishes and embarked perfectly sober.

It was always my custom to endeavour to persuade them to take away the rum, though I seldom succeeded. The fatigue of watching them when the liquor begins to operate is inconceivable, besides the risk of our lives and property.

After their departure I was left for near a month with only one man, the rest being employed in fishing and watching the marten traps: in both pursuits they were successful, but particularly in the former, having brought home near eight thousand, trout, pike, pickerill, and white fish, which we hung up as usual to freeze. When the severe weather sets in every man has his allowance served out twice a day, and this rule is constantly adhered to even though the stock be very considerable.

[113] In the beginning of December a new married couple arrived, and having given them a little rum, they got very merry; and perceiving the woman was in great good humour, I desired her to sing a love-song, which she consented to with cheerfulness.

THE SONG

“Debwoye, nee zargay ween aighter, payshik oathy, seizeebocquoit shenargussey me tarbiscoach nepeech cassawicka nepoo, moszack pemartus, seizeebocquoit meteeek.”

“It is true I love him only whose heart is like the sweet sap that runs from the sugar-tree, and is brother to the aspin leaf, that always lives and shivers.”

I thanked her for her song, and giving the husband a bottle of scuttaywabo,[78] left them together to enjoy their hearts' delight; and as there was not sufficient to intoxicate them, I was not afraid of a jealous fit. I always bore in mind the circumstance at Lac la Mort, and my fortunate escape. In the morning they departed, paying me well for my presents with some beaver, bear, and otter skins.

A few days after an Indian arrived, with his two wives and three children; they immediately came into my house, and sat down by the fire. I thought I discovered deceit in his countenance, and watched him very narrowly. I asked him what success he had met with in his hunt? He told me he believed the Master of Life was angry with him, for he had fired at several animals, and expended all his ammunition, without doing execution. This was a figurative mode of expression, [114] and convinced me that he was lazy, and could not get credit for what he wanted: he added, that his family had been without provisions some days, and hoped I would cheer their hearts, and be a friend to them. I then ordered a 152large kettle to be put on the fire, and boiled some fish, which they ate of very heartily, particularly the women and children.

I questioned him concerning his hunting grounds: he told me he was from Hudson's Bay, and had come so far, hearing some traders were settled at Skunk's Lake, and as he knew there were plenty of animals, he expected to get a great many skins. This I was convinced was false, and I immediately considered him as a straggler, or he certainly would not have travelled so far, unless he had done something to displease the servants at the Company's forts, and could not obtain credit. Looking at me very earnestly, he asked me to trust him a gun, blanket, and ammunition; but I refused him: this displeased him; and going out of the house, one of them called him, the other followed him out, and said something to him in a

low tone of voice: this appeared to me like a confederacy, and put me on my guard. In a few minutes he returned, and renewed his solicitations; saying, "Are you afraid to trust me forty skins? I will pay you in the spring."—I told him I never gave credit to any but good hunters, and I was sure he was an idle straggler, who lived without industry, and advised him to return to his own tribe, and solicit their assistance who knew him better than I did. So severe a check to his application (and which I was afterwards sorry for) seemed to rouse the bad spirit in his heart, and he left me under the influence of the Matchee Mannitoo, and went down to his canoe, seeming to be in deep discourse with his wives.

[115] My man observing them, watched them very narrowly, and saw the Indian endeavouring to file off the end of his gun, to make it convenient to conceal under his blanket; having shortened and loaded it, he returned with it hid under his dress. This transaction being a convincing proof of his diabolical intention, I directed my man to stand on one side of the door, and I took my post on the other, waiting his entrance into the house. Just as he passed the threshold, I knocked him down with a billet of wood, and taking his short gun from him, beat him so much that we were obliged to carry him down to his canoe, where his family were waiting for him, and ordered them all off the ground, threatening that in case of refusal his canoe should be instantly broken to pieces, and his family turned adrift. The squaws and children appeared very much distressed, and with great reluctance obeyed my orders. Thus I got rid of an unprincipled set; and, as will soon appear, escaped a danger which was certainly intended to involve me and my men in utter ruin.

A few days after their departure, an Indian arrived and informed me that Mr. Joseph la Forme, a brother trader who was settled at Lac le Sel, was killed by a Savage, and described his person. I had no doubt but he was the same man who attempted to destroy me. I communicated every circumstance of his conduct, and the revenge I took on the occasion. The Indian congratulated me on my happy escape, as he was known to be a bad man by all the tribe, having killed his brother and one of his wives last fall, which was the reason that the band he belonged to would not suffer him to stay among them. As I was anxious to know the particulars, I desired him to relate them. He told me that he was informed by a Savage whom he accidentally met, and [116] to whom the murderer had revealed the particulars, that the Indian being disappointed in his design against me, pursued his journey with the bad spirit in his heart, and arrived at Joseph La Forme's house, which he entered, and asked for rum and tobacco, which was given him; but observing he had not any thing to trade with, La Forme was suspicious of him: whilst he

was smoking he asked for credit, but was refused, and told that he was not only a bad hunter, but that he had a heart of lead. This imprudent reproach incensed him, and observing no one in the house but the trader, (the men being fishing) he watched a convenient opportunity, and when La Forme stooped to light his pipe, shot him through the head, plundered the house of a few things, and went off.

On this information I dispatched six Indians, with a trusty Canadian, to endeavour to secure the property, in which they fortunately succeeded, and brought away all the peltry, merchandise, &c. and the deceased trader's men, whom I engaged in my service. About six weeks after, one of the tribe whom he had formerly offended, and who had heard of this recent act of villainy, after repeated reproaches for his baseness, tomahawked him, cut off his head, and brought it to my house to shew my Indians.

The unhappy fate of Joseph La Forme affords a melancholy example of the precarious situation of all Indian traders; and furnishes a useful lesson of instruction to those who may in future be engaged in commerce with the Savages—that it is frequently more prudent to conceal resentment than to gratify it.

155[117] We are reduced to great Hardships for want of Provisions;—relieved by the fortunate Arrival of some Indians.—Narrative of a most shocking Transaction perpetrated by one Janvier, belonging to a Mr. Fulton, a Trader—Mr. Fulton takes Means to induce a Confession, and punishes him accordingly.—Visit from a Trader belonging to the Hudson's Bay Company—some Observations concerning that Trade, and the Conduct of the Company towards their Servants.

The latter end of January, 1779, a band of the Rat Nation arrived, belonging to Shekarkistergoan, or the Skunk's-head Lake, which is between Lake Nipegon and Lake Manontoye. They brought me provisions and furs, which I bartered for; giving them rum, as usual, of which they drank freely without doing any mischief. After their departure we were short of provisions, having a larger household to provide for, by taking La Forme's men into my service. We were reduced to a few fish and some wild rice, or menomon (which are kept in muccucks, or bark boxes), to support myself and seventeen men; the allowance to each being only a handful of rice and a small fish, about 2lb. weight, which is boiled together and makes pleasant soup. I have often been surprised that fish-broth is not more generally used, as it is certainly very palatable; but I am not sufficiently informed in medical knowledge to speak either of its wholesomeness or nutritive qualities. Sturgeon broth is

delicious, and leaves a pleasing taste on the tongue; but as it rather increases the appetite for food, [118] as I have experienced, it should not be taken but when there is plenty of meat to be got. This fish is very common in Albany, and is sold at 1d. per lb. York currency. The flesh is called Albany beef.

156The frost continuing very severe, and no appearance of Indians to supply our wants, we were obliged to take off the hair from the bear skins, and roast the hide, which tastes like pork. This, with some tripe de roche boiled, was all our nourishment.[79]

Tripe de roche, or hawercoon, is a weed that grows to the rocks, of a spongy nature, and very unwholesome, causing violent pains in the bowels, and frequently occasions a flux. I am informed the traders in the Northwest, have often experienced this disorder; and some of them, in very severe weather, have been compelled to eat it for fourteen days successively, which weakened them exceedingly. When the disorder does not terminate in a flux, it occasions a violent vomiting, and sometimes spitting of blood, with acute spasms in the bowels.

After suffering great hardships, I advised my men to make marten traps, and set them in the woods as they did last winter at Lac la Mort, which supplied us occasionally, but very short of our real wants. At last a band of Indians arrived with ten slay load of meat and furs, which relieved us, and gave us fresh spirits. My men discovered them at a distance, and, though much enfeebled by severe hunger, put on their snow shoes to meet them.

It is surprising what efforts nature makes to support distress, and how cheerfully she struggles when the prospect of relief is near at [119] hand; every painful recollection of past sufferings quickly vanishes, and new life seems to breathe through every vein. Those who live in constant luxury, and are ignorant of the meaning of the bread of carefulness, are strangers to the joy arising from an unexpected supply, and sitting down to a table 157in the wilderness. Hunger needs not the borrowed aid of sauce; and, in the language of Pope, “To enjoy, is to obey.”—How delightful is such obedience!

The Indians seeing our distress by our looks, which were very meagre, gave us all their provisions, consisting of bear, racoon, and moose. The kettle was soon put on the fire, and

we made a comfortable repast, with cheerful hearts; the Indians during the time enjoying the happiness of relieving our wants.

Notwithstanding the cruelty of Savages, they possess virtues which do honour to human nature, and exhibit instances of generosity and kindness which the most philanthropic soul cannot exceed. They are ignorant of those mean sordid sentiments which disgrace many more enlightened, and more wealthy; and from the knowledge I have of their disposition, I am sure they would blush at the parsimonious conduct of those whom Providence hath blessed with affluence.

After the repast, the chief (not willing to disturb us before) asked for some tobacco, and having smoked some time, said he had bad news to tell me, which some Indians had informed him of, concerning Mr. Fulton, then at Shekarkistergoan, and which he was sorry to relate, as it affected him exceedingly. I desired him to finish his pipe, and drink a glass of rum before he began the story; and at the same [120] time mentioned my surprise at not hearing of any remarkable circumstance, having traded with a band of the Rat nation within a few days, who came from that Lake. He told me he had met the band, and related the affair to them, who were much astonished; but as Mr. Fulton's men were not returned from fishing when they left the place, the transaction was not known till after their departure.

158Mr. Fulton being obliged to divide his men into two parties, which is called the cawway, or casting lots, which party shall hunt and fish, and which shall stay with the master, did so accordingly. The fishing party consisted of Charles Janvier, François St. Ange, and Lewis Dufresne, all natives of Canada, who, being provided with axes, ice-cutters, and fishing materials, set off, and at the expiration of eight days arrived at a convenient place, where they built a hut, in which they lived for some time tolerably well; but fish failing them, and having no success in hunting, they were almost starved. In this situation, said the chief, the bad spirit had entered into the heart of Janvier, and he being the strongest man, supported hunger better than his companions, by which he was enabled soon after to effect a diabolical purpose he had formed, of killing the first Indian who should come in his way, and which he had declared he would do. In the height of their distress Janvier perceived a Savage at some distance, with a load at his back, and instantly returning to the hut, told his poor dispirited partners of their approaching relief. They instantly got up, though very weak, and came out of the hut as fast as their feeble limbs would allow them. The Indian arrived, took off his load, which was only two otters, and two hares, and gave them to Janvier, who

received them with great satisfaction; and when he had skinned them, boiled [121] them in the kettle without cleansing them, so extreme was their hunger. This seasonable relief was soon devoured, and from the eagerness with which Janvier eat, and the satisfaction which appeared in his countenance when he looked at the Savage, the men were in hopes he had forgot the rash determination he had formed, and flattered themselves his mind was not so depraved as to entertain a thought of doing an injury to the man whose timely assistance had saved their lives. The next morning the Indian told them he was sorry he could not assist them further, having no ammunition, but that he was going to Mr. Fulton for a supply.

Janvier's heart being inexorable even to the kindness he had received, desired the Savage to assist him in placing a large log of wood on the fire, as his companions were unable to do it. The Indian cheerfully complied, and stooping to take it up, Janvier knocked him down with an axe and dragged him to the door of the hut, cut him up, and with the most unfeeling barbarity put as much of the flesh of his deliverer into the kettle as he thought sufficient for a meal. When it was dressed, he compelled François St. Ange, and Louis Dufresne, to partake of it, and obliged them to kiss the cross which hung at his breast, and swear by all the saints never to reveal the transaction; threatening, at the same time, that if they did they should share the same fate. Intimidated by his threats, and the certainty that he would fulfil them, they solemnly promised perfect compliance with his injunctions. Having overcome their first aversion, which extreme hunger had occasioned, they ate immoderately of the horrid meal, and soon after fell sick, with violent reachings. During their indisposition they complained to each other softly, that it was eating the Indian's flesh [122] which had occasioned their sickness: Janvier overhearing them, called them fools and rascals, and asked them if they were afraid the Savage would come to life again; and with an insolent sneer desired them to tell him which they thought the best part of a man? The poor fellows only replied they were very sick and could not tell the cause. In a few days (having no other provision) 160 the Indian was eaten up, and Janvier determined to have human flesh if no other could be obtained. To this end he sought an opportunity to quarrel with St. Ange—Dufresne not daring to interfere in the dispute. Janvier willing, however, to appear as plausible in the eyes of Dufresne as possible, widened the breach very artfully, till pretending he was no longer able to contain his anger, asked Dufresne if he did not think St. Ange deserved the Indian's fate, for daring to say he would reveal the circumstance he had so solemnly sworn to conceal. Dufresne dreading the consequences of differing with him in sentiment, said he thought St. Ange was to blame; upon which reply, Janvier immediately struck him with an axe, and killed him: he then cut him up, and boiled a part, of which he obliged Dufresne to partake, he not daring to shew any reluctance. Fortunately

for Dufresne the weather became more moderate, and having caught plenty of fish, they proposed to return to their master. Janvier, intoxicated with ideas of his superiority, obliged Dufresne to drag him in an Indian sledge to Mr. Fulton's house—a cruel imposition upon him, and a dreadful service to a weak emaciated man! but knowing he was unable to resist, he made a virtue of necessity, and obeyed the tyrant with seeming cheerfulness. On the journey he was frequently reminded of his oath, and the fatal consequences that would attend him if he should ever divulge the secret, which Janvier assured him would produce instant death.

[123] Mr. Fulton was much rejoiced at their return, being in want of his men, as the Indians were daily coming in with their winter hunt. Soon after their arrival he made enquiry after St. Ange—but no answer was given. He then addressed Janvier directly upon the subject, who 161 said he was gone on the hunt with a chief of the name of Onnemay, or the Sturgeon, whom Mr. Fulton knew, and that he would soon return. One of the Canadians contradicted him by saying that could not be true, as Onnemay left Mr. Fulton's house the day before their return. Janvier then said he might be mistaken in the chief's name, as he was not well acquainted with the Indian language, and Dufresne, for fear of a discovery at that time, changed the conversation in hopes of pleasing Janvier.

Several days elapsed, and St. Ange not returning, Janvier was again questioned, who told them as before, and appealed to Dufresne for the truth of his assertions, which he was obliged to confirm.

Mr. Fulton not being perfectly satisfied, examined them apart; from Janvier he could not get any information, but Dufresne hesitated, and at last said he had sworn not to reveal—but that St. Ange would never return.—Mr. Fulton endeavoured to convince him that the breach of an oath, so imposed, was no crime; and in the end he convinced the Canadian that it was so far from being obligatory in the sight of God, that it would be a sin of the most heinous nature in him to conceal the truth; artfully adding, as an additional argument to induce him to reveal the transaction, that if he had no doubt he was himself perfectly innocent, he could not have any honest motive for secrecy, and that he had no occasion to dread the resentment of Janvier, as he would engage to [124] protect him from all hazard by the discovery. Thus persuaded and encouraged, Dufresne disclosed the whole affair, but requested Mr. Fulton's secrecy, which he promised until the conversation should be renewed, when it was agreed that he should relate every particular 162 in Janvier's

presence. Janvier was repeatedly urged by the rest of the men to give them some information respecting the absence of St. Ange, but he remained obstinately silent: some of them went so far as to accuse him in pretty plain terms of knowing too much about him, but he treated their insinuations with indifference.

Mr. Fulton having disposed of all his goods, prepared to leave his wintering ground, and every thing being properly arranged they departed. The first night after their departure Mr. Fulton loaded a brace of pistols, and having previously acquainted his men with the discovery Dufresne had made, and the punishment he intended for the villain, came out of his tent and stood by the fire round which the Canadians were seated. The conversation about St. Ange being purposely renewed, Mr. Fulton remarked it was cruel to leave him in the woods with the Indians, and blamed Janvier particularly, as he was the foreman of the party, and therefore the more responsible. Janvier nettled at the repetition of the subject, (for guilt is soon angry) replied that St. Ange was able to take care of himself, and that he had not any controul over him. Dufresne was then censured; upon which, agreeably to the plan settled with Mr. Fulton, he divulged the whole transaction, and gave a full account of every particular of Janvier's conduct. Janvier attempted to take instant revenge for the aspersion, as he called it, and denied the charge with the most hardened effrontery and solemn asseverations. Mr. Fulton then thought it a proper time [125] to interfere; and to cover him if possible with confusion, asked him "which was the best part of a man?" Janvier replied, with ready insolence, that those who had eaten human flesh could easily tell: but being repeatedly urged, and at length thrown off his guard, he replied in great wrath, the fact. The party encouraged by this confession, pressed the charge, till at last he confessed the facts he was accused of, and declared that in a similar situation he would kill his brother.

Mr. Fulton could no longer suppress his resentment, and going up to Janvier, told him he was an abandoned villain, first for killing a harmless Indian who had generously relieved his wants, and afterwards eating him like a cannibal; that not content with these atrocious acts, he had increased his guilt by another deliberate murder on a defenceless man, his companion, his fellow-labourer, and friend; that he was a disgrace to human nature, and ought not to be suffered to live a moment longer; and without allowing him time to reply, shot him through the head. The men were ordered to bury him, and in the morning Mr. Fulton continued his journey to Michillimakinac, where on his arrival he surrendered himself to the commanding officer, who on a close examination of the men, honourably acquitted him; but recommended him not to venture again into those parts, where the

Indian was killed, lest the Savages should hear of the transaction, and resent the death of one of their tribe, whereby the innocent might suffer for the acts of the guilty.[80]

In the month of February I had a visit from a trader, dressed in a smoked leather shirt; who was accompanied by three Indians, and had been absent five days from Fort Albany.[81] He said he was induced to come [126] 164 from a motive of curiosity to see me, not having heard of any person wintering so far inland before, except the servants belonging to the Hudson's Bay Company. At that time I had very little provisions, and eight men to maintain, besides Mr. Joseph La Forme's Canadians; our chief food was tripe de roche; on his arrival the kettle was on the fire with the leaves: he asked what food I had; I ordered some to be taken out of the pot, and put into a bark dish, which he tasted, but could not swallow. I informed him that it had been a principal part of our diet for many days, and in the best of times we had nothing but wild animal food, and seldom any flour, as the quantity of Indian corn we were able to bring along with us from Pays Plat was not sufficient to last the winter. When I had given him a description of my mode of living, which he confessed was very different from the comforts he enjoyed, I took him into my store, and shewed him the packs of beaver I had collected: this increased his surprise, as he could not conceive how it was possible to transport a sufficient quantity of goods to barter for the value I seemed to be in possession of. He asked me to return with him, and promised to supply me with provisions; but I told him I was engaged in an employ, and had supported the same disagreeable situation the preceding winter at Lac la Mort; and as I could not expect to pass my life among the Indians with so much ease as in England, my duty obliged me to remain till the season was over, when I should return and endeavour to make myself some amends for the hardships I had endured, by 165 giving a good account of the merchandise intrusted to my care, and receiving a reward for my labours. In the morning he took his leave, wishing me the speedy arrival of some Indians who might be able to relieve me from such pressing necessity by supplying me with plenty of more nourishing and palatable food.

[127] This civility from one of the Hudson's Bay Company's servants leads me to make some few observations in vindication of that respectable body, whose character has been so severely, and I think so unjustly, censured.

Mr. Joseph Robson, one of the company's servants, who resided in their factory six years as surveyor and supervisor of the buildings, in a work published by him some years since,[82] animadverts in very strong terms on the mode in which the governors of forts exert what he

calls their uncontrollable authority, and asserts that their extreme tyranny is a perpetual source of personal disgust. He also says, that “the overplus trade is big with iniquity, and no less inconsistent with the company’s true interest, than it is injurious to the natives, who by means of it are become more and more alienated, and are either discouraged from hunting at all, or induced to carry all their furs to the French.” It may be necessary here to observe, that the overplus trade arises from the peltry which the company’s servants obtain in barter with the 166natives beyond the ratio stipulated by the company, and which belongs to themselves.

This is a heavy charge, and, if true, a very proper cause of complaint; but it should seem there is not sufficient ground for the accusation, for Mr. Robson afterwards says that this overplus trade is of little advantage to them, for “that part of it, they always add to the company’s stock, for the sake of enhancing the merit of their services, and apply the remainder to their own use, which is often expended in bribes to screen their faults, and continue them in their command.” What a strange degree of folly, as well as of guilt! that the governors are so [128] weak and so wicked as to commit enormities only to make a temporary advantage, and are obliged to distribute the wages of iniquity in order to screen themselves from its consequences among the company, and their confederates in vice; whereas by a contrary conduct they would be equally rich, more respected, and also feel an inward satisfaction of mind from the consciousness of having discharged their trust with integrity; ideas too absurd to be admitted. With regard to the company, it cannot be supposed they are ignorant of this “overplus trade,” or the means by which their servants obtain the advantages arising from it; if they are not, and no impartial person will suppose they are, they not only allow but approve of the conduct of their governors, from a conviction of its being beneficial to the interests of the company; a proper reward for the labours of their servants, or from some other motive, which because it is adopted by men so respectable, and so much above reproach, must be allowed to be wise and prudent.

In the next place, I believe it will be very difficult to prove that the conduct of the governors has “alienated 167the natives from the company’s interest, and discouraged them from hunting.” The former is at present by no means clear, as I am credibly informed the New Northwest Company,[83] whose trade extends to the boundaries of the settlements of the Hudson’s Bay Company, find very little encouragement from the Indians; if therefore the natives were disgusted, they would embrace the first opportunity of shewing their dislike, by carrying their peltry to the new traders; nothing can be more natural than to expect that

this would be the consequence; but as they have not done so, the inference is fair that they are not disgusted.

[129] Another observation is, “that the cruel and oppressive behaviour of the governors and captains towards the inferior servants, not only deters useful people from engaging in the company’s service (a circumstance they should attend to for their own interest), but furnishes one pretext for the bad character that is given of the company.”

Though in the particular department in which I have been many years engaged as an Indian interpreter and trader, I have had few opportunities of a personal and intimate acquaintance with many of the company’s servants (having been in a commerce in direct opposition to their interest), yet I can speak with confidence in regard to some of them whom I have conversed with; that in every point of view I believe them to be useful servants, and well skilled in the language of the natives.—So far in answer to the assertion “that useful people are deterred from entering into the service.” And by way of refuting the charge of “cruelty and oppression,” I need only add, what none I think will deny, that they have been so well satisfied with the conduct of their superiors, that many of them have continued in the service more than twenty years.

I believe, upon the whole, it will appear that the conduct of the governors at home and abroad, is perfectly consistent with the true interests of the company, and that any other mode of behaviour would tend to anarchy and confusion; and I must declare for my own part that I never heard of that personal disgust which Mr. Robson so much complains of, but have rather found an anxious solicitude to be employed in their service.

[130] Mr. Carver, in his history of North America, observes, “that on the waters which fall into Lake Winnepeek, the neighbouring nations take a great many furs, some of them they carry to the Hudson’s Bay Company’s factories, situated at the entrance of the Bourbon River, but this they do with reluctance on several accounts; for some of the Assinipoils and Killistinoe Indians,[84] who usually traded with the company’s servants, told him that if they could be sure of a constant supply of goods from Michillimakinac, they would not trade any where else; that they shewed him some cloth, and other articles purchased at Hudson’s Bay, with which they were much dissatisfied, thinking they had been greatly imposed on in the barter.”

169To this Mr. Carver adds, “that allowing their accounts true, he could not help joining in their opinion; but afterwards he admits that this dissatisfaction might probably proceed, in a great measure, from the intrigues of the Canadian traders; and that the method they took to withdraw the Indians from their attachment to the Hudson’s Bay Company, and to engage their good opinion in behalf of their new employers, was by depreciating, on all occasions, the company’s goods, and magnifying the advantages that would arise to them from trafficking entirely with the Canadian traders: in this they too well succeeded; and from this, doubtless, did the dissatisfaction which the Assinipoils and Killistinoes proceed.” But, says he, further, “another reason augmented it, the length of the journey to the Hudson’s Bay Factories, which they informed him took up three months during the summer heats to go and return, and from the smallness of their canoes they could not carry more than one third of the beaver they [131] killed, so that it is not to be wondered at that the Indians should wish to have traders come to reside among them.” As Mr. Carver did not travel in the interior parts as a trader, he could not have any interested commercial motives; on that account he is certainly entitled to credit as an impartial observer: the public will judge of his remarks, and how far they tend to censure, or approve, the conduct of the Hudson’s Bay Company.

I am induced to indulge this digression in consequence of a new publication on the present state of Hudson’s Bay by Mr. Umfreville.[85]

170It has unfortunately happened that the company’s enemies have been frequently of their own household, persons in whom they placed confidence and to whom they entrusted the mysteries of their commerce. Differences will naturally arise, and doubtless have arisen between the governors and their servants, in which case no man is, or ought to be, obliged to stay in a service that is disagreeable to him; but then it is certainly sufficient to leave the employ, and highly improper to endeavour to prejudice the interest he once thought and felt it his duty to promote; and I am of opinion that not a single transaction, or circumstance, should be revealed that has not an immediate reference to the cause of the disagreement, or is necessary to support or vindicate a reputation. The present governors are men of great probity, and probably may not condescend to take notice of these heavy charges against them; but as the most exalted virtue may be injured by groundless assertions, I trust the public will not be displeased with any endeavours, however feeble, to vindicate the character of so respectable a body. As I do not intend to enter on the subject

more fully, I shall only entreat the reader, if [132] he wishes further satisfaction on this head, to peruse the publication of Mr. Robson, who was one of the company's servants, and who, Mr. Umfreville acknowledges to be a true and impartial writer. From his account the reader will judge of the propriety of Mr. Umfreville's censures on the conduct of the governors of the Hudson's Bay Company. A more copious examination of Mr. Umfreville's publication would exceed the limits I have prescribed to myself; and I cannot but think that those who peruse it will readily perceive how much injustice he has done to the governors and the company.

171[133] Arrival of more Indians.—Rum gets short; adopt the usual Mode to encrease the Stock, which enables us to conclude our Traffic for the Season.—Take leave of the Indians, and proceed on our Journey homewards.—Account of an Indian Courtship.—Servile State of the Women after Marriage.—Observations on the Confidence which the Indians put in the Master of Life,—&c.—Arrive safe at Pays Plat.

Soon after the departure of the trader, a large band, consisting of about 100, came in; my stock of rum was very small, which was a misfortune, as rum is too important in treaties with the Indians to be easily dispensed with. On their arrival they wished to drink, but I continued to barter for all their furs before I gave them any rum: having finished the business, they grew clamorous, when I gave them as much rum as I could spare, upon receipt of which they embarked in tolerable good humour.

In the month of April the last band came in, and I was extremely perplexed how to act, having a very small portion of rum, and no prospect of encreasing my stock; I was therefore obliged to dilute it so as to make it about one-fifth part weaker than usual, which made twenty gallons of very passable Indian rum. Having supplied them [134] with wearing apparel, &c. and received their peltry, I gave them a taste of the scuttaywabo, and just before my embarkation made the following speech:

“Haguarmissey cockinnor an Nishinnorbay kee wabindan cawwickcar nin serpargussey nee zargetoone, keennerwind kaygo kee cushkendum webatch neennerwind tercushenan nepewar annacotchigon nin ojey petoone. Wa haguarmissey cockinnor meenwendesay bazam Ebeckcheck 172megoyyack debwoye neegee kaygo arwayyor matchee oathty, kee cannawendan cockinnor, mokoman, baskeyzegan goyer becka, kee minniquy kaygo arwayyor annascartissey woke, mornooch kee permartissyan cockinnor an Nishinnorbay nogome debwoye negee nepewar artawway winnin ojey zargetoone an Nishinnorbay,

keshpin suggermarch wennewar metach nin oje debarchemon kitchee ojemaw awassa
woity kitchee wakaygan Michillimakinac metach kaygoshish ween oje bockettywaun
keennerwind.

“Now, my friends, take courage, I have always shewn you a good heart, and you all know I am full of pity for you, your wives, and children; therefore do not be uneasy, or think the time long I shall be absent from you. I hope the Master of Life will give me courage and strength to return to you, and bring you goods. Now, as you know I have no sugar on my lips, nor any spear at my tongue, and that my ears are not stopt, nor my heart bound up, I hope you will deliver up your knives, guns, and tomahawks, and have no bad heart before you begin to drink, so that on my return I may find you all well. I shall speak with [135] courage to the great English chief, at Michillimakinac, and he will open his heart to you.”

Having finished my speech, the weapons were collected and delivered to me. I then gave them a considerable quantity of rum, after which I returned their knives, &c. to convince them of the good opinion I entertained of them, and that I had no doubt but they would attend to the advice I had given them. I then got into my canoe, and waving my hand, was saluted by a discharge of 200 guns, which I returned by one volley, and pursued my journey in good spirits, heartily pleased at leaving my winter quarters.

173We continued our voyage without meeting with any occurrence worth relating till we arrived at the Skunk’s River, where I had unfortunately shot off a chief’s ear, as I have before related. Here I met with the new married couple, and some of the same band to whom I was so much obliged in the preceding December for singing the love-songs; and being desirous of obtaining a perfect knowledge of their manners and customs, I made many inquiries, and among other knowledge gained information of the Chippeway form of courtship, which I presume will be acceptable to those who have as much curiosity as myself.[86]

INDIAN COURTSHIP

When an Indian wishes to take a wife, and sees one to his mind, he applies to the father of the girl, and asks his consent in the following words:

[136] “Nocey, cunner kee darmisssey kee darniss nee zargayyar kakaygo O
waterwarwardoossin cawween peccan weettey gammat ottertassey memarjis mee mor.”

“Father, I love your daughter, will you give her to me, that the small roots of her heart may entangle with mine, so that the strongest wind that blows shall never separate them.”

If the father approves, an interview is appointed, for which the lover prepares by a perspiration; he then comes into her presence, sits down on the ground, and smokes his pipe: during the time of smoking, he keeps throwing small pieces of wood, of about an inch in length at her one by one to the number of one hundred. As many as she can catch in a bark bowl, so many presents her lover must make to her father, which he considers as payment for his daughter. The young warrior then gives a feast, to which he invites all the family—when the feast is done, they dance and sing their war songs.—The merriment being over, and mutual presents exchanged between the lover and her relations, the father covers them with a beaver robe, and gives them likewise a new gun and a birch canoe, with which the ceremony ends.

When the French became masters of Canada, the ceremony of marriage between the Savages was very fantastical.

When a lover wished his mistress to be informed of his affection, he procured an interview with her, which was always at night, and in [137] the presence of some of her friends; this was conducted in the following manner:

He entered the wigwam, the door of which was commonly a skin, and went up to the hearth on which some hot coals were burning; he then lighted a stick of wood, and approaching his mistress, pulled her three times by the nose, to awaken her; this was done with decency, and being the custom, the squaw did not feel alarmed at the liberty. This ceremony, ridiculous as it may appear, was continued occasionally for two months, both parties behaving during the time in all other respects, with the greatest circumspection.

The moment she becomes a wife, she loses her liberty, and is an obsequious slave to her husband, who never loses sight of his prerogative. Wherever he goes she must follow, and durst not venture to incense him by a refusal, knowing that if she neglects him, extreme punishment, if not death, ensues. The chief liberty he allows her is to dance and sing in his company, and is seldom known to take any more notice of her than of the most
175indifferent person: while she is obliged to perform the drudgery of life, which custom or insensibility enables her to do with the utmost cheerfulness.

A circumstance of this kind I recollect reading which happened at Beaver Creek, about twenty-five miles from Fort Pitt. An Indian woman observing some white men to carry fire-wood on their shoulders, took up her hatchet, and brought them in a short time a great burden on her back; and throwing it down by the fire, said, she not only pitied [138] them, but thought it was a great scandal to see men doing that which was properly the work of women.

The men consider women as of no other use but to produce them children, and to perform the drudgeries of life; as to the offspring, he prefers the sons to the daughter, because he expects they will all prove warriors. The daughters they do not value for the same reason that they subjugate their wives, deeming them worthy only to wait on warriors and do those things which would disgrace the male sex.

We pursued our journey to Lac le Nid au Corbeau, where we killed some wild geese and ducks, which at this season of the year have a fishy taste. Here we rested two days to enable us to pursue the remainder of our voyage with greater vigour. The third morning, at daybreak, we embarked, and arrived at La grande Côte de la Roche, where we were fortunate enough to kill two bears, which eat remarkably fine, and having some leisure time to spare in the cookery, we enjoyed them with as high a relish as in better situations we had done more luxuriant meals.

We proceeded to Cranberry Lake, where we caught some fish, and picked as many cranberries as we could 176conveniently carry; from thence we continued our route to Portage la Rame, where we were again wind-bound for some days; but during our stay we had not a single visitor to disturb us. At length the wind proving favourable, we proceeded to Rivière la Pique; on my arrival I was immediately struck with the remembrance of the

escape I had from Payshik Ogashey [139] last year; but my mind was almost as instantly relieved by the recollection of his being killed, and no longer a terror to traders.

This was one among many instances in which I found that when the heart is oppressed with unpleasant recollections, or forebodings, the Author of our Being conveys relief to the mind very unexpectedly. This sudden transition we are too apt to impute to our own wisdom, and to attribute the escape from dangers we have experienced, or the hopes of deliverance which we form, entirely to our own sagacity and foresight. The Indians, on the contrary, think more properly; they say it is the Master of Life from whom we derive that presence of mind which has extricated or procured us relief. To the Master of Life the Indian addresses himself even for his daily support.—To him he imputes his victories and his success; and when subdued, and fastened to the stake, he thanks him for giving him courage to open his veins.—It is this confidence which enables him to bear the severest tortures with composure, and in the height of anguish, to defy the utmost malice of his enemies.

Notwithstanding the Chippeways, as well as the greater part of the Indian nations, of North America, think so justly, it is to be lamented that it is not universally so. The Mattaugwessawauks, it is said, do not worship a Supreme Being, and that when success attends them in 177war, they attribute the merit of the victory to their own valour and skill. But notwithstanding their disbelief of a Master of Life, in some respects, they are not less superstitious than other Savages, for they think that certain places are haunted by evil spirits, whose power they dread, and impressed with these ideas cautiously avoid them. Another proof [140] of their superstition is, if one of their people is killed by accident, they preserve a hand or a foot, which they salt, and dry, and keep as a charm to avert calamities; by which it appears, that although they do not acknowledge a dependance on a good spirit, they entertain fears and apprehensions of a bad one; which induces one to hope that such a deviation from the common belief of mankind may never be confirmed, as it would stamp human nature with an odium too horrid to think of. But to conclude this digression—we continued our voyage to Pays Plat, where we stayed some days in the society of traders, who had also wintered in the inlands, and others who arrived with goods to supply those who were engaged to return; but as my time was expired, I returned to Michillimakinac. After waiting on the commanding officer, and giving an account of my stewardship to my employers, I retired to Chippeway Point, a spot of ground out of the Fort, where I lived with an Indian family, who occasionally made me mackissins, and other parts of Indian dress.[87]

THIRD EXPEDITION

[141] Remain some Time at Chippeway Point.—Account of a whimsical Circumstance, whereby I had nearly incurred the Displeasure of the Commanding Officer.—Narrative of the fortunate Escape of a Mr. Ramsay, a Trader.—Undertake to escort a Quantity of Merchandise from the Mississippi to Michillimakinac, which I perform with Success.—Return to Montreal; from thence to Quebec, where I engage with a new Employer.

During the time I remained at Chippeway Point, I had frequent offers from the officers to sleep at their quarters within the fort; but being accustomed to lie in the woods, I generally preferred that situation. A circumstance happened soon after my arrival, which I shall relate.

In consequence of Indian treachery in the year 1764, (when the Savages, commanded by Pontiac the chief, under the pretence of a game at ball, formed a plan to destroy the inhabitants, and take possession of the fort, and in which they unfortunately succeeded, to the extreme mortification of the English), there was a standing order that no Indian should be permitted to enter the fort with fire arms; nor any squaw, or Indian woman, allowed to sleep within the walls of the garrison on any pretence whatever; and for the better security of the inhabitants, when a council is held with the chiefs, double sentries are always placed.[88]

[142] Having a strong desire to introduce a great 179chief's daughter and her sister, (notwithstanding the governor's orders) I communicated my intentions to an officer, and desired his assistance to complete the plan. He very politely told me that he could not appear to countenance my scheme, but would give me every possible assistance consistent with his station. I assured him that they were a great chief's daughters, and that I would be answerable for their conduct.

With his consent I applied to two soldiers, and asked them if they could spare time to roll a large hogshead of bottled porter from Chippeway Point to the Fort; they told me whenever it suited me they would be ready to assist. Having purchased the hogshead, and got it rolled

down the hill whilst the officers were at dinner, I told the squaws of my plan, and having knocked out the head and bung, and bored several holes to admit as much air as possible, desired them to get in, which with some difficulty I persuaded them to do. I then replaced the head, and ran immediately to the soldiers to acquaint them that the porter was ready, and desired their assistance without delay, as I was afraid some of the bottles were broken, and it would be proper to examine them as soon as possible.

The soldiers immediately returned with me, and applying their shoulders to the cask, rolled it up the hill with great labour and fatigue, continually observing that it was very heavy. Just as they arrived at the gate, the commanding officer and the commissary were coming through, and seeing the hogshead, asked the soldiers what they had got there? they replied it was bottled porter for a trader, who had desired them to roll it from the Point. As a vessel had just then arrived from the Détroit, [143] the commanding officer was so satisfied with 180the account the soldiers gave, that he observed it was very fortunate, for they now should have plenty of good beer to drink. The soldiers had scarcely rolled another turn, when unluckily one of them kicked his foot against a stone, who with the extreme pain he suffered, fell down. The other, not being able to sustain the whole weight, let go his hold, and the hogshead rolled down the hill with great velocity. Just as it came to the bottom the head fell out, and the squaws exhibited the deception. Unfortunately the commanding officer was near at hand when the accident happened, and though it was a manifest breach of his orders, he could not help smiling at the conceit; and looking at the imprisoned females, said to them, “pretty bottled porter indeed!” The squaws were so confused that they ran with the utmost precipitation into the woods, and did not make their appearance for several days.

On the commanding officer’s return to the fort, enquiry was made for me, and I was under the necessity of obeying his summons, although I confess my situation was very unpleasant. As soon as I came into his presence, assuming a look of displeasure, he asked me how I could dare to disobey the orders of the garrison, which I knew were issued to prevent the most serious consequences; that I was more culpable than another person, knowing the nature and disposition of the Indian women, and the impropriety and danger of confiding in them, adding that for the sake of example, and to prevent others from acting so imprudently, he believed he should send me down to Montreal in irons.

Alarmed at my situation, I made the best apology in my power, and assured him I was extremely sorry for my conduct, but hoped he would [144] pardon it. This
181acknowledgment of the offence induced him to forgive me, and as he said he considered it a frolic of youth, he would pass it over, but cautioned me against playing such tricks again. I felt myself extremely obliged by his lenity, and promised to conduct myself with more propriety in future, which promise I faithfully kept: for though the experiment to admit the squaws would not have been attended with any bad consequences, I did not chuse again to risk the commanding officer's displeasure.

On the 11th of August, the traders arrived from the Mississippi, and brought an account of an extraordinary escape which a Mr. Ramsay and his brother had from a tribe of the nation of the Poes, in their way to St. Joseph.

The Poes are a very wild savage people, have an aversion to Englishmen, and generally give them as much trouble as possible in passing or repassing the Fort of St. Joseph's, where some French traders are settled by their permission.[89]

It seems the Canadians were invited by the Savages to land, and Mr. Ramsay supposing they had some furs to dispose of, ordered his men to go on shore; when standing up in his canoe just before his debarkation, three of the warriors waded through the water neck-high, dragged him out of his canoe, and carried him on shore. Mr. Ramsay's men immediately landed, and were preparing to follow their master, but observing eleven Indians near at hand, and perceiving the bad intention of the chiefs, got again into their canoes, leaving the one in which Mr. Ramsay and his son were, on the beach, and
182paddled to an adjacent [145] island, waiting the event of a circumstance which threatened death to their masters.

Mr. Ramsay being tied to the stump of a tree, and his son narrowly watched, the Indians rummaged the canoe, and brought up as much rum as they thought they could drink; they then began to sing their war songs; and making a large fire near the stump to which Mr. Ramsay was tied, they sat down on the ground, and began to insult him, telling him he was an old woman, and obliged his brother to join in the derision.

The usual mode of execution among the Savages, is as follows:

When a warrior is taken, he is brought into a hut, and tied with small cords made of the bark of trees, about the size of a cod-line: he is then fastened to a stump, and a small rattle put into his hand, called chessaquoy, which he shakes while he sings the dead war song:

“Wabindan payshik shemagonish kitchee mannitoo; nee wee waybenan nee yoe Matchee Mannitoo.”

“Master of Life, view me well as a warrior; I have thrown away my body against the bad spirit.”

When the song is finished, the prisoner is untied, and made to run the gauntlet through two ranks of women, who are provided with small sticks to beat him. After this punishment a dog-feast is prepared with bear’s grease and huckleberries, of which he is obliged to eat. He [146] is then brought again to the stake, when wood is placed round him. He now sings his war song, and the women set fire to the pile, the prisoner singing as it burns. The bones are then collected and fixed to the war-standard, which is a high pole painted with vermillion.

It is said that the nation of the Followens, or Wild 183Oats,[90] kill their wives and children before they go to battle, that in case of a defeat the enemy shall not have any prisoners of their nation.

The Poes, beginning to feel the effects of the rum, examined the cords, which were made of the bark of the willow tree, and ordered some wood to be put round the stump, to be ready when they should find themselves disposed to burn him. Soon after they untied him, and brought him to the war-kettle to make his death-feast; which consisted of dog, tyger-cat, and bear’s grease, mixed with wild oats, of which he was compelled to eat. Mr. Ramsay, knowing the nature of Indians, complied with seeming cheerfulness, and said he was satisfied. He was taken back to the intended place of execution, and tied again to the stump, from which, with great composure, he desired permission to make his speech

before he changed his climate, which being granted, he immediately spoke to them to the following effect:

“It is true the Master of Life has sent me here to those Indians whose hearts are full of poisoned blood, and as they mean me to change my climate, I shall go with courage to a better trading ground, where I shall find good Indians. They have always known me to have had pity on them, their wives, and children, since I have been 184a trader, and to have opened my heart to them on all occasions; but now the [147] bad spirit has joined his heart with theirs, to make me change my climate, which I am glad of, for I am better known in the country I am going to, and by greater warriors than ever these were. I now look on all the chiefs as old women; and as I am the Peshshekey (or buffalo), I shall drink my last with them, and carry the news to the warriors in the other climate.”

Having attentively heard his speech, they prepared for his death; which he perceiving, immediately told his brother not to be disheartened, as he had hopes of overcoming their fury, and desired him to ply them with rum, and keep their kettles constantly filled. His brother followed the instructions he gave him, and distributed the rum among them very plentifully. When Mr. Ramsay discovered that they were sufficiently intoxicated to be incapable of doing mischief, he desired his brother to cut his cords; and being released, assisted in pouring rum down their throats till they were quite insensible. Fired with resentment at their intended barbarity, he and his brother cut all their throats, loaded his canoe with the articles they had taken out, and paddled from shore as fast as they could. The men hailed him at some distance, and were rejoiced to see him safe; and after arranging their cargo, pursued their journey into the Indian country, by a different course.

I was informed Mr. Ramsay returned afterwards to Michillimakinac, where he was congratulated by the commanding officer on his fortunate escape; but he never thought it prudent to go that route again.

About this time the Indian traders formed a company of militia, which I joined with the rank of adjutant and 185lieutenant, under Captain [148] John Macnamara. In the month of June 1780, news was brought from the Mississippi, that the Indian traders had deposited their furs at La Prairie des Chiens, or Dogs' Field, (where there is a town of considerable note, built after the Indian manner) under the care of Mons. Longlad, the king's interpreter;[91]

and that the Americans were in great force at the Illinois, a town inhabited by different nations, at the back of the Kentucky State, under the Spanish government, who have a fort on the opposite shore, commanded by an officer and about twelve men, to prevent illicit trade.[92]

The commanding officer at Michillimakinac[93] asked me to accompany a party of Indians and Canadians to the Mississippi, which I consented to with the utmost cheerfulness. We left the post with thirty-six Southern Indians, of the Ottigaumies and Sioux nations, and twenty[94] Canadians, in nine large birch canoes, laden 186with Indian presents. After a march of three days I was taken ill, which I attributed to hard living in the Nipegon Country; considering, however, the urgency of the business, and that there was not any one of the party capable of acting as interpreter, I struggled with my indisposition; apprehending, also, that if I could not pursue the journey, I should be exposed to great inconveniences; and therefore I encreased my endeavours, determined to risk my life at all hazards.

The fourth day we encamped at Lac les Puans, so called, I apprehend, from the Indians who reside on the banks being naturally filthy[95]—here we got plenty of 187deer and bears, Indian corn, melons and other fruit. The Southern Indians have more villages, and are better civilized than the Northern, the climate being warm, and nature more prolific, which [149] enables them to raise the fruits of the earth without much labour. Their houses are covered with birch bark, and decorated with bows and arrows, and weapons of war. Their beds are bark and matts made of rushes.

We pursued our voyage to Ouisconsin, a fine River, with a strong current for about sixty leagues, which our canoes ran down in a day and a half; and upon which we saw an immense quantity of ducks, geese, and other fowl. On this river we were obliged to unload our canoes, in order to transport our goods across the portage, about two miles in length. We encamped on the banks, and intended setting off at break of day, but one of the Indians was bitten by a rattlesnake, which Mr. Adair calls the bright inhabitant of the woods, and which had fourteen rattles.

Mr. Beatty relates that as he was preaching to the Indians and others, at a small house near Juniata River, a rattlesnake crept into the room, but was happily discovered and killed; and before the people could well recover themselves, a snake of another kind was discovered

among the assembly, which was also killed without any other detriment than disturbing the congregation, which surprised him very much, as it was a matter of astonishment how these reptiles could crawl into the house without 188being offended by some one, and which also excites them to bite.

The Indians say that when a woman is in labour, holding the tail of a rattlesnake in her hand, and shaking the rattles, assists her delivery. It is always observable that the Indians take out the bag which contains [150] the poison of this venomous reptile, and carry it alive in their medicine box when they go to war.

This unfortunate accident retarded our journey till the unhappy sufferer relieved himself by cutting out the wounded part from the calf of his leg, and applying salt and gunpowder, and binding it up with the leaves of the red willow tree; he was soon able to proceed, bearing the pain with that fortitude for which the Savages are so eminently distinguished.

At the close of the next day we encamped near the river, and it rained very hard: the Indians made some bark huts. One of them walking some distance in the woods, discovered a small loghouse, in which he found a white man, with his arms cut off, lying on his back. We conjectured he had been settled at the spot, and killed by a bad Indian, which must have happened very recently, as he was not putrid. Before our departure we buried him.

The next day we arrived at the Forks of the Mississippi, where were two hundred Indians of the nation of the Renards, or Foxes, on horseback, armed with spears, bows and arrows. They did not seem pleased with our appearance, which Warbishar, the chief of our band, told me.[96] Just before we landed they dismounted, and surveyed 189us. The Sioux asked me if I was afraid; I told them I had seen a greater number of Savages before, and more wild than any of the Southern Indians. Warbishar gave orders to strike ashore. As soon as we landed, the Renards took our Indians by the hand, and invited them into their camp. In the space of an hour they prepared a feast, which consisted of five [151] Indian dogs, bear, beaver, deer, mountain cat, and racoon, boiled in bear's grease, and mixed with huckleberries. After the repast, the Indians danced and sung. A council was then held, when the chief of the Renards addressed Warbishar to this effect.

“Brothers, we are happy to see you; we have no bad heart against you; although we are not the same nation by language, our hearts are the same: we are all Indians, and are happy to hear our great Father has pity on us, and sends us wherewithal to cover us, and enable us to hunt.”

To which Warbishar made answer.—“It is true, my children, our great Father has sent me this way to take the skins and furs that are in the Dog’s Field, under captain Longlad’s charge, least the Great Knives (meaning the Americans)[97] should plunder them. I am come with the white man (meaning me) to give you wherewithal to cover you, and ammunition to hunt.”

When the speech was finished, we immediately distributed 190the presents, got our canoes into the water, and left the Renards in the most friendly manner.

After seven days journey we arrived at La Prairie des Chiens,[98] where we found the merchants’ peltry, in packs, in a loghouse guarded by captain Longlad and some Indians, who were rejoiced to see us. After resting some time, we took out about three hundred packs of the best skins, and filled the canoes. Sixty more which remained, we burnt, to prevent the enemy from taking them, having ourselves no [152] room to stow any more, and proceeded on our journey back to Michillimakinac. About five days after our departure, we were informed that the Americans came to attack us, but to their extreme mortification we were out of their reach. Seventeen days after leaving La Prairie des Chiens, we arrived at Lac les Puans, where we found a party of Indians encamped. The next day we embarked, and arrived at Michillimakinac, after an absence of eighty days. Soon after my return, I waited on the commanding officer, expecting payment for my services; but was referred for satisfaction to the Indian traders, from whom I never received any compensation.

By this means I was left destitute even of the necessities of life; but I did not remain long in this uncomfortable situation, for I soon found protection and support among the Indians; but as their assistance would not afford the means to appear in civil society, I was under the necessity of soliciting friendship from the merchants, to enable me to return to Montreal, which I fortunately obtained. I 191left Michillimakinac in the beginning of September, and arrived at Montreal on the 27th of the same month.

I embraced the first opportunity to call on my old master, expecting to find him in good health, but alas! he had paid the debt of nature, and was succeeded by his nephew, who had been cotemporary clerk with me. He permitted me to lodge at his house for a fortnight, but a few days after my abode with him, my situation being different from what I had experienced during the life of my old master, I asked him to fit me out with an assortment of goods for the Indian trade, and promised to remit him payment in furs. He told me I was welcome to any [153] goods he had in his store that would suit me, but on examining the stock, all the merchandise proper for the Savages was disposed of, and nothing left that would answer any profitable purpose.

I then left his house, returning him thanks for his civility; and having procured pecuniary assistance from a friend, took lodgings in the town, where I stayed some time. I then went to Quebec, where a gentleman accidentally hearing that I was out of employ, and knowing that I could speak the Indian languages, sent for me and engaged me in his service, to go among the Indians at Lake Temiscaming,[99] or any other situation I might think most eligible for commerce.

192[154] Leave Quebec—Description of the Loretto Indians; some Remarks relative to an Assertion, that the American Indians have no Beards.—Mistake the Mercury Packet of Quebec for an American Privateer.—Proceed on our Journey, and arrive at our Winter Residence.—Description of several Sorts of Snakes.—Meet with great Success, and soon complete our Traffic.—Return to Quebec.

Being furnished with a proper assortment of merchandise, I left Quebec, and proceeded to Tadousac,[100] which is at the end of the Saguenay River, near the River St. Laurence. About nine miles from Quebec there is a village inhabited by the Loretto Indians, who are properly of the nation of the Hurons.[101] They embraced Christianity, through the means of the Jesuits, and follow the Catholic religion. The women have remarkable good voices, and sing hymns in their own language most charmingly. They cultivate the ground, and bring the produce to market; and in their manners they are the most innocent and harmless of all the Savages in North America. Their houses are decent, and built after the Canadian fashion; they are an exception to the generality of Indians, seldom drinking any spirituous liquors; they are for the most part tall, robust people, and well shaped; have short black hair, which is shaved off the forehead from ear to ear, and wear neither caps nor hats. With 193regard to their beards, though they are scarcely visible, they have them in common with

all the tribes of Savages; but having an aversion to excrescences, they carefully pluck [155] out every hair from the upper jaw and chin with brass wire, which they twist together in the form of pincers; and it is well known that all traders carry out that article of commerce for this express purpose.

Baron de la Hontan seems to have been much mistaken when, in speaking of the Savages, he says that they have no beards. Lord Kaims was also in the same error, when he asserted there is not a single hair on an Indian's body, excepting the eyelashes, eyebrows, and hair of the head, and that there is no appearance of a beard.

This observation Mr. James Adair remarks is utterly void of foundation, as can be attested by all who have had any communication with them; and major Robert Rogers,[102] who certainly knew the Indians as well as any man, says that they totally destroy their beards; which proves beyond a doubt that they are not naturally imbarbes.

I have been led into these observations from the perusal of Lord Kaims's Sketches of the History of Man,[103] who not only insists that the Indians have no beards, but builds on the hypothesis to prove a local creation.

Tadousac is on the sea side, north of the River St. Laurence, and inhabited by a few Indians called mountaineers, who live chiefly on fish;[104] and one trader, clerk to the gentleman in whose service I was engaged.

194There is a French clergyman and a church for the Indians, who are all Catholics. At this village I remained a fortnight, during which [156] time the American privateers were continually cruising about. One morning there was a great fog, but we could just discern at a small distance a vessel: this alarmed the priest and the Indians. My brother Englishman (the trader who was settled here) joined with me in soliciting the Indians to stand their ground, which the priest strongly opposed, though paid by the British government. This incensed me, and I insisted on taking some of his flock with me to reconnoitre, and endeavour to discover what vessel she was, though I had strong suspicions she was an American privateer. We went towards the shore, but could not discover the number of guns she mounted; we returned to our camp, and all the Indians at my request accompanied me

to attack her. We embarked in canoes, dressed alike, and as we approached perceived she lay at anchor, and was a vessel of inconsiderable force, mounting only eight small swivels. I immediately went on one side of her, and directed the Indians to the other, to inclose her as much as we could. Having reached the vessel, I took hold of a rope and went on board; the captain was alarmed, and his fears were increased when he saw himself surrounded with canoes, filled with Savages armed with guns and tomahawks; however, he advanced towards me, and clapping me on the shoulder, asked what I wanted? I was too politic to make any reply at that time. He then asked me, if I would have some biscuit? I replied, caween, or no. He shook his head, as much as to say, I 195wish I could know what you want. The Indians then came on board, and the captain having only seven men; and our number being upwards of forty, well armed, did not know how to act, but, probably willing to please me, ordered his men to get some biscuit and rum. Whilst the sailors were gone, I perceived she was an English vessel, and then asked the captain in English to whom she belonged; he was very agreeably surprised, [157] told me his name was Allcrow, and that he commanded the Mercury Packet of Quebec. This information gave me occasion to rejoice we did not take rough means; and when I communicated the intelligence to the Indians they were highly pleased, and shook hands with the captain.

The captain then accompanied us to shore in our canoes, and we landed at our encampment. We afterwards went to the priest's house, where we dined. Mr. Martin, the priest, and myself were invited on board the next day, when we had an excellent repast, with plenty of wine and other liquors. Unfortunately we drank too freely, and returning in the evening, the priest began to be very angry with me for encouraging the Savages; this reprehension, with his former conduct, incensed me exceedingly, and in the heat of passion I threw him overboard, but by the assistance of the sailors he was saved. On our landing, our contest led us to blows, but we were soon parted. When we were recovered from intoxication, we shook hands, and afterwards remained good friends.

The next day the Indians were seized with an epidemic fever, which deprived them of the use of their limbs, and occasioned a delirium. The disorder attacked me very severely, but by the friendly assistance of Mr. Martin, who had a medicine chest, in about three weeks I recovered.

196The winter now advancing very rapidly, and the unavoidable delay at this post, obliged me to proceed on my journey on snow shoes, carrying all my goods on Indian slays, through the woods, and over [158] high mountains.

We travelled twenty-one days, on a deep snow, about one hundred leagues through the Saguenay country, which was very fatiguing, till we arrived at a place called Checootimy;[105] about half way up the river on which it stands the salt water ebbs and flows. Only a few Indians reside here, and one Indian trader, with whom I wintered, and hunted, killing a great many animals. Early in the spring I took my leave of him, and being furnished with canoes, pursued my journey to St. John's Lake; from thence to Panebacash River, to Lake Shaboomoochoine, which lies northeast of Lake Arbitibis about the distance of seven days Indian march.[106]

Near the Falls of Panebacash River I landed, and ascended a high mountain, to survey a large cave, about two hundred yards deep, and three yards wide at the mouth. Here I picked up a piece of ore, about three inches square; the exterior crust was black and very thin, and when broke, appeared yellow. I brought it to Quebec, but by some accident lost it, which I lamented exceedingly, 197as some of my friends to whom I shewed it were of opinion that it was very valuable.

This journey was farther inland, by near eighty leagues, than any trader had ever been, the only settlement in that part of Canada being at St. Peter's Lake, where a French house was formerly established, and where an English trader, who was employed by the merchants in whose service I was engaged, resided.

I arrived at Lake Shaboomoochoine on the 26th of May, 1781, where I intended only to stay a few days; but some Indians arrived who assured me that it would answer my purpose to winter, and promised [159] to supply me with fish, furs, and skins. This induced me to remain here; and I built a house suitable for my business, and kept two Indians with their wives to hunt for me.

On the 29th we set our nets, and in about four hours caught abundance of large trout, pike, maskenonjey, pickerill, and white fish, and as the country abounded with wild fowl, we were never without two courses at table, with roots for garden stuff.

On the 17th of June a band of Indians arrived, who were agreeably surprised to see a trader at a place where no one had settled before, and they were particularly delighted when they heard me speak their own language.

During my residence here I saw a great many snakes; and one day in particular as I was walking in the woods, I discovered one of those reptiles in the grass; the instant I perceived it, I cut a long stick and dropt it gently on the snake's head; it immediately moved, and I could hear the rattles very distinctly. Whilst I was surveying the brightness of its colours, which were inexpressibly beautiful, it was coiling itself round like a rope to dart at me; 198this warned me of my danger, and I took the taper end of the stick, and let the heavy end fall on its head; the weight of the blow stunned it, and seizing this opportunity, I struck it again, which killed it. I measured it, and judged the length to be at least five feet and an half, and the thickest part about four inches in circumference, with nine rattles on the tail, which agreeable to the general observation, made his age nine years; but I believe this is not an established fact, as it is uncertain at what time the rattle begins to appear.

[160] The flesh of this reptile is delicious, and I have frequently eaten of it with great goût. I have seen the Indians poison it with the juice of tobacco.

Whilst I am on the subject, though not quite connected with it, I shall make some observations on the turkey and black water snake.

The turkey snake is longer than the rattle snake, with stripes on the back, and a spear at the end of its tail like an anchor, and a double row of teeth in each jaw. It takes its name from its voice, which resembles the note of a wild turkey. In the Mississippi it feeds on wild rice, which grows among long grass, bearing its head frequently erect, and makes a noise like a turkey to decoy it; as the bird approaches, the snake darts its tail into it, and makes it an easy prey.

The black water snake is used by the Indians when they go to war; they pull out the teeth, tie the head and tail together, and fasten it round their bodies, which soon kills it. They take it off every night, and put it on every morning.

In travelling from Toniata Creek, on the River St. Laurence to Pimetiscotyan Landing, on Lake Ontario, I saw one of these snakes swimming with a flat fish in its mouth, which I had the good fortune to shoot, and released the prisoner from the jaws of death.[107]

I kept a flag constantly flying at my little fort, which the Indians paid respect to by a salute from their guns. The band who were at this time with me held a council, and made me a present of two very large [161] beaver robes, and several valuable skins, with plenty of provisions, for which I supplied them with tobacco, rum, trinkets, and ammunition. Two days after they left me, and desired me to wait their return, which I promised, provided they would bring me furs and skins to load the canoes, and they should be repaid with Indian goods. As I depended on their punctuality, I remained perfectly satisfied.

I was then left with two white men, and two Indians and their wives. We passed our time in hunting and fishing; and as there were a great many small islands near us, we made frequent trips to shoot wild fowl, which enabled us to keep a good table. On one of the islands we discovered two Indian huts, but from their appearance no person had visited them for a length of time. About half a mile from the place we saw a high pole, daubed over with vermilion paint; on the top were placed three human skulls, and the bones hung round: the Indians supposed it had been erected many years. About an hour before sun set we returned to our wigwam. The next morning, in the absence of the Indians, the Canadians assisted me in mixing the rum, and assorting the goods, to be prepared against the arrival of the 200 Savages, and to fill up the time, which hung heavy on our hands.

On the 24th of June, a band of Indians arrived from Lake Arbitibis, who brought a considerable quantity of excellent furs and skins, with dried meat, which I bartered for. When the bargain was made, I gave them some rum, as usual upon such occasions, which, after their long march, highly delighted them. They drank very plentifully, as I had exceeded the common donation, but their cargo deserved it; and I always found it my interest to be generous to them upon a barter.

[162] On their departure, taking an Indian for my guide, I made a visit to a brother trader, one hundred and fifty miles from my settlement. I stayed with him about a fortnight, and was on the point of returning, when two Indians came to inform me, by the desire of my Canadians, that a band of Savages waited for me. In about five days we returned, and I bartered for all their furs.

On the 16th of July, about fifty Savages came with their spring hunt, which I also bartered for, though the peltry was very inferior to what is collected in winter; but as I was determined to make as good a season as possible, I was eager to avail myself of every opportunity to increase my stock.

The latter end of the month, the band who had promised to return came in, and fulfilled their promise, bringing a large quantity of furs, which, with the stock I had collected during their absence, was as much as my canoes would hold. They also brought intelligence that the Hudson's Bay Company had been pillaged of their furs by the French.[108]

201Early in the month of August I made up my packs, and embarked for Quebec, where I arrived in about six weeks, to the great joy of my employers, who, from my long absence, were very uneasy; however, the cargo fully satisfied them, and convinced them of my industry and integrity in their service. Being persuaded I had undergone great fatigue, they made me a handsome present above my salary, and I quitted their service, and the Indian life, with a resolution to endeavour to procure an employ less hazardous, and where I could partake [163] of the pleasures of society with less fatigue both of body and mind.

I remained some time at Quebec, and intended to pass my winter there, but my money being nearly exhausted, and my mind not reconciled to another Indian voyage, I returned to Montreal, where I found friends to supply my wants till the spring following.

202[164] Visit Fort George.—Remarkable Instance of Courage in a Mohawk Indian.—Return to England.—Enter into a new Engagement, and return to Canada, with Merchandise for the Indian Commerce.

In May I took a trip to Fort George, situated on a lake of the same name, called by the French, Saint Sacrement, where I stayed with some of the Mohawks, who were encamped there.[109] In the beginning of the French and Indian war in 1757, there was a remarkable instance of resolution and cool deliberate courage in one of these Savages, occasioned by a sentence being passed upon a soldier to receive five hundred lashes for intoxication.

An Indian known by the name of Silver Heels, from his superior agility, as well as his admirable finesse in the art of war, and who had killed more of the enemy than any one of the tribes in alliance with Great Britain, accidentally came into the fort just before the soldier was to receive his punishment, and expressed his displeasure that a man should be so shamefully disgraced. He went up to the commanding officer, and asked him what crime the soldier had committed: the officer not chusing to be questioned, ordered one of his men to send Silver Heels away, and to inform him that the company of Indians 203 was not agreeable on such occasions; Wa! wa! or, Oh! oh! replied the Savage, but what is the warrior tied up for? For getting drunk, answered [165] the soldier:—Is that all? said Silver Heels, then provide another set of halberts, and tie up your chief, for he gets drunk twice a day. Having said so, he instantly left the fort, telling the soldier he should quickly return, to endeavour to prevent the punishment being inflicted. Soon after the delinquent was tied up, and the drummers in waiting to obey orders, Silver Heels returned; and going up to the officer, with a tomahawk and scalping knife, said to him, Father, are you a warrior, or do you only think yourself so? If you are brave, you will not suffer your men to strike this soldier whilst I am in this fort. Let me advise you not to spill the good English blood which to-morrow may be wanted to oppose an enemy.—The officer, turning upon his heel, answered with an indignant look, that the soldier had transgressed, and must be flogged.—Well! replied Silver Heels, then flog him, and we shall soon see whether you are as brave a warrior as an Indian.

About two days after the officer was riding some distance from the fort, and Silver Heels was lying flat on his stomach, according to his usual custom when he watched to surprise an enemy. The officer passed without perceiving him, when he instantly sprung up, and laying hold of the horse's bridle, told the officer to dismount and fight him. The officer judging it improper to risk his life against a Savage, refused to dismount, and endeavoured to spur his horse. Silver Heels perceiving his intention, tomahawked the horse, who fell down suddenly, and the officer rolled on the ground without being hurt. Now, says Silver Heels, we are on equal terms, and, as you have a brace of pistols and a sword, you cannot have any objection 204 to fight me. The officer still refusing, Silver Heels told him, that he

thought himself a warrior when he ordered one of his white slaves to be flogged for a [166] breach of martial law, but that he had now forgot the character he then assumed, or he certainly would have fought him: and looking very sternly, added, that he had a great mind to make him change his climate; but as that mode of proceeding would not answer his purpose, and sufficiently expose him among his brother warriors, he might walk home as soon as he pleased; and that to-morrow morning he would come to the fort with the horse's scalp, and relate the circumstance. The officer was rejoiced to escape so well, though he was obliged to walk a distance of three miles.

The next morning Silver Heels arrived, and asked to see the officer, but was denied admission into his presence. Some of his brother officers came out, and enquired his business; he related to them the circumstance between the officer and himself, and exhibited the trophy; adding, that to-morrow he intended going to war, and should make a point of taking an old woman prisoner, whom he should send to take the command of the fort, as the great chief was only fit to fight with his dog, or cat, when he was eating, lest they should have more than him. Then asking for some rum (which was given him), he left the fort to fulfil his promise, but was soon after killed in an engagement, fighting manfully at the head of a party of Mohawks, near the Bloody Pond, joining to Lord Loudon's road, in the way to Albany.

Just before the frost set in, I returned to Montreal, and visited my old Cahnuaga friends, where I amused myself in the Indian way, as I always preferred their society to the Canadians; notwithstanding, I occasionally mixed in 205 more civilized amusements, and as I danced tolerably well, my company was generally sought after.

[167] The Canadians are particularly fond of dancing, from the seigneur to the habitant; and though the meaner sort of people do not excel in it, there is a peculiar ease, and careless indifference, which, though it appears too rustic, is far from being disagreeable. The beverage on these occasions is sour Spanish red wine, called black strap; and this, homely as it would be thought in more refined assemblies, is there considered as a very handsome manner of treating their friends.

The winter being passed, I determined to go to Quebec, and endeavour to get a passage to England, not having any prospect of a permanent settlement in Canada. On my arrival I put

up at a tavern, and lived as moderately as possible, from necessity more than inclination; for every one knows that Indian traders, like sailors, are seldom sufficiently prudent to save much money. Fortunately for me, I met with an old school-fellow at Quebec, a captain of a ship, whom I had not seen for sixteen years. To him I communicated my distressed situation, and by him was generously relieved. In addition to this act of kindness, he promised me a free passage to England on board his vessel, which offer I accepted with pleasure and gratitude.

Having fixed the time of his departure, I took the post, and went to Montreal to settle my affairs: I then returned to Quebec, from whence we sailed the 11th day of October, 1783, and put into Newfoundland. When we came in sight of harbour, several of us requested permission to take the long boat, and row on shore, which was granted; but it being a dead calm, we made very little way. We had not left the ship more than a league, when a southwest wind sprang up, and retarded us considerably. In the evening the wind abated, and with hard rowing [168] we reached the shore about midnight, both fatigued and hungry. Early in the morning the ship came into harbour, and had suffered some damage by beating about in the night, which induced the captain to dispose of the cargo. On the 9th of November we left Newfoundland, on board another vessel: our passage was favourable, without any remarkable occurrence, and we arrived in London the 30th of the same month.

My native city, upon my arrival, appeared like a new world to me, having been absent from England fifteen years; and it was with difficulty I found any of my old friends, the greatest part of them in such a length of time being dead.

In February, 1784, I entered into an engagement with a relation to return to Canada; and being furnished with a cargo, left London on the 15th of April following. On the 20th we got under weigh, and put into Portsmouth, to take in wines. After a bad and tedious passage of eleven weeks, we arrived safe at Quebec, from whence my goods were sent to Montreal in small craft. Unfortunately the season was too far advanced to suffer me to attempt going to Michillimakinac, and wintering in the inlands, as I had no prospect of providing suitable canoes; nor were my goods properly assorted, and there was not time sufficient to arrange them, so as to make the intended voyage. This induced me to consult a friend upon the occasion, who advised me to dispose of my goods at public vendue, which I did, at very great loss, so that I could only remit my friend in London a very small sum in part of payment. In this adventure nothing succeeded to my wishes, for by my credulity, and being

willing 207to retrieve, if possible, the loss I had sustained, I soon [169] increased my difficulties, so that in a few months after my arrival, all my schemes failing, I was left totally destitute.

In February, 1785, I quitted Montreal, and walked from La Prairie to St. John's,[110] where I accidentally found a friend who supplied me with money to go to New York. I proceeded to Stony Point, where I stayed two days with some loyalist officers, some of whom accompanied me to Crown Point, where we also stayed three days.[111] We then parted company, and I hired a sloop, which carried me safely to New York, where I took a lodging, and lived as moderately as I could.

During my residence there, I met a Loretto Savage, called Indian John, who had been in the American service all the war, and who waited to receive a reward for his fidelity, as the Congress were then sitting. He told me he had been at war for them nine years, had killed a great many of their enemies, and had only received a gun, two blankets, three pieces of Indian gartering, and one hundred dollars in paper money, which he could not make use of; and as I understood his language he desired me to render him service by interpreting for 208him to the governor. I desired him to call at my lodgings, and in the mean time I wrote down the circumstances he had related to me, that I might be prepared, in case I was sent for at a short notice.

A few days after he explained to me more fully the nature of his claim, and how he had been trifled with by Congress. I asked him his reasons for engaging in the American service; he told me that at the commencement of the war, the Big Knives (meaning the Americans), had advised him to turn his heart from the English, and promised to supply all his [170] wants; and, as an additional inducement, that they would pay a better price for a scalp than had been usually given, and at the close of the war he should have land and stock sufficient to maintain himself and family: but he was now convinced they only meant to serve themselves, as he had frequently applied for a performance of their promises without success; and that he was determined to get satisfaction some way or other.

I told him I was not sorry for his disappointments; that he was a bad Indian for deserting his good father, who lived on the other side the great water, and who was universally beloved by all who knew him, particularly by the Loretto nation; and as the subjects of this great and

good father lived near his village, and gave every proof of their love and friendship to his nation, which he could not be ignorant of, I was surprized that he should suffer his heart to be moved by the changeable winds, and was sorry to add, that I believed he was the only Loretto Indian with two minds, and therefore I was unwilling to say any thing in his behalf before Congress.

These remarks on his conduct seemed to affect him, 209and he replied, that he hoped, notwithstanding he had deserted the cause of his great father, he should find me his friend to attend him when his affair should be taken under consideration by Congress, as he had not any one in New York who could serve him so essentially. I told him, that in spite of my just displeasure, his situation had melted my heart, and I would not refuse his request.

In about four days he came to acquaint me that Congress were then sitting, and he believed they would pay his demand if I would go [171] with him, and interpret to the governor; but having taken an active part against the Americans during the war, I would willingly have been excused. On his urging my promise to him, I could not resist, and immediately accompanied him to the council, where Governor Franklin was president, who asked me if I knew Indian John; I told him, only by seeing him at New York, and that I came at his particular request to speak in his behalf. He desired me to assure the Indian that he might depend on having his demand satisfied in a few days, and to make his mind easy: this I communicated to him, with which he seemed perfectly satisfied.

Soon after he was sent for, and he received an order on a merchant for one hundred dollars, which being presented for payment, was not honoured: this incensed John, and he desired me to tell the merchant, that the Congress and their agents were all thieves. The merchant excused himself by saying that the treasury was very poor, and could not immediately satisfy every demand.

The next day John went again to the governor, and having acquainted him with the refusal of the draft, received an order on another merchant, which was duly 210honoured.[112] John's heart was quite elated, and in less than ten days he had disposed of all the money, like a true Indian, principally in drink.

My interference in favour of the Indian made me well known, and procured me an introduction to a respectable mercantile house, from which I got credit for the Indian trade. Having arranged my cargo, I proceeded in a vessel to Albany, where I arrived on the 18th of June. [172] At this place I unloaded my goods, and got them conveyed in a waggon to Schenectady, where I purchased two boats. On the 6th of July I proceeded up the Mohawk River, to the German Flats, where I stayed three days; during which time a band of Oneida Indians came and solicited me to winter at their village, which was about ten days march from Fort Stanwix. I complied with their request, and set off with twenty-eight horses to carry my baggage, being obliged to travel through the woods, and sold my boats to satisfy those from whom I hired the horses. I arrived safe at the village with all my goods, but finding the plan was not likely to turn out advantageous, after a residence with them three weeks, I bartered for the few skins they had, and having re-purchased my boats, I left my Indian friends, proceeding immediately to the Jenesee Lake, where I arrived on the 14th of September.

Having landed and secured my goods, I ordered my men to prepare a house. The chiefs, on hearing of my arrival, assembled, and came up to me, accompanied by their young men, expecting presents, which I was obliged to make; and I asked permission to stay on their ground. Some consented, and others disapproved; at the last, after consulting each other, they told me I might go on with the building. The men immediately proceeded with cheerfulness and dispatch, in hopes of finishing the business before their return; but how transitory are all human events! whilst the men were at work, some Indians came in great haste to desire my attendance at the council fire, which was at a small distance from my intended place of residence. I obeyed the summons, and sat down by the chiefs, when one of them rose up, and addressed me to the following effect.

[173] “You are the Sugar, for so you are called in our tongue, but you must not have too much sweetness on your lips. All the Oneida Indians say they have heard that you are only come under a pretence to get our lands from us; but this must not be, my young warriors will not suffer any Englishman to settle here. You are like the great chief, General Johnson, who asked for a spot of ground, or large bed, to lie on; and when Hendrick, the chief of the Mohawks, had granted his request, he got possession of a great quantity of our hunting grounds; and we have reason to think that you intend to dream us out of our natural rights.[113] We loved Sir William, and therefore consented to all his requests; but you are a stranger, and must not take these liberties: therefore, my advice is, that you depart to-

morrow at break of day, or you will be plundered by the young warriors, and it will not be in our power to redress you.”

As I have mentioned a council, I shall describe the form of a house erected for that purpose near Fort Pitt.

The building is long, with two fires in it at a proper distance from each other, without any chimney or partition: the entry into the house is by two doors, one at each end: over the door the figure of a turtle was drawn, which is the ensign of the particular tribe: on each doorpost was cut out the face of an old man, an emblem of that gravity and wisdom that every senator ought to be possessed of. On each side, the whole length of the house within, is a platform, or bed, five feet wide, raised above the floor one foot and a half, made of broad pieces of wood split, which serves equally for a bed to sleep on, and a place to sit down. It is covered with a handsome mat made of rushes, and at the upper end of the building the king, or great chief sat.

[174] To return from this digression,—We baled up our goods, and proceeded to Fort Oswego, which I attempted to pass, but was prevented by a centinel, who informed me that no batteau with goods could pass without the commanding officer’s permission. I told him I was not an American, and would wait on him to know if he had issued such orders. I travelled in my Indian dress, and left my men at the landing, about a mile and a half from the garrison. I paid my respects to him, and acquainted him with my situation: he told me he should be very happy to oblige me, but that it was impossible to pass the fort without proper credentials; and as I had them not, he desired me to return to the United States, to prevent my goods being seized. Notwithstanding this friendly advice, I was determined to run the risk, and, to my extreme mortification, they all were seized by the customhouse officers, by them deposited in the king’s warehouse, and afterwards condemned.

In this distressed situation, and very ill in health, I went down in a king’s boat to Cataraqui, where I arrived on the 8th of November, and took up my abode at Mr. Howell’s tavern. My indisposition increasing, I was obliged to keep to my blankets, and had only one faithful squaw to attend me. In this miserable state I lay some time, expecting every hour to change my climate, though determined to use every endeavour to effect a recovery. At this interesting period my correspondent arrived from England, and notwithstanding the losses

he had sustained by my imprudence, performed the part of a good Samaritan, pouring oil and wine into my wounds; and finding my disorder required medical assistance, desired a surgeon to attend me, and I was soon sufficiently recovered to pursue my journey to La Chine, where I remained some months in preparing the goods which he brought from England [175] for a Northwest journey among the Indians, intending to go next spring to Michillimakinac; mais la mauvaise fortune qui nous poursuivit toujours, frustrated all our schemes, and obliged us to leave La Chine on the 26th of May, 1786, from whence we proceeded in a large Schenectady boat[114] to Oswegatche, where we stopped a few hours, and landed at a place called Toniata Creek, where I determined to apply 214for five hundred acres of land as a loyalist settler;[115] which being granted me by government, I immediately felled timber to build a house for the accommodation of Indians, in hopes of deriving considerable advantages by barter.

In a few days the Indians came to trade with us, which gave us encouragement, and at the same time flattered us with the pleasing ideas of succeeding in commerce: but some affairs requiring my friend's attendance at Montreal, trade suffered a temporary suspense, and at his return he told me that we must leave our quarters, for he was apprehensive of a seizure for an English debt.

In this cruel dilemma, flight was our only security, and we embarked all our goods on board a large batteau, and proceeded to Pimitiscoty landing upon Lake Ontario, where we entered a creek, and found accommodation at a trader's house. The next morning we prepared a house for trade, and for some days went on successfully; but our happiness was of short duration, for an officer pursued us, and took possession of all the effects he could find, even to the tent which sheltered us from the weather, and carried them down to Montreal, where they were sold for less than one fourth part of their original cost and charges.—Thus circumstanced, without any property to trade with, we came down [176] to the Bay of Kenty, and resided there ten months among the loyalist settlers, whose hospitality tended to soften the rigour of distress, and alleviate my sorrows. Early in 215spring, 1786, we crossed over to Carlton Island, and from thence to Fort Oswego, intending to go into the United States by that post; but not having any pass, we were not allowed to pursue our journey. In this mortifying situation I advised my friend to adopt another plan, and procured a conveyance to Salmon Creek, about twenty miles from the Fort. Here we rested one day, and with five pounds of pork, and two loaves of bread, we set off on foot, escorted by a squaw, expecting to reach Fort Stanwix in about four days; but the old path was entirely obliterated, and we were obliged to return in the evening to the creek,

disappointed in the attempt. Unwilling to make another effort, we agreed to return to Fort Oswego, and though the distance was not more than twenty miles, we were six days before we reached the garrison.

In this expedition my friend suffered great hardships, not being accustomed to sleep in the woods; and having also a knapsack with about thirty pounds weight to carry, grieved him exceedingly: the shortness of provisions increased the distress, for it cannot be supposed that five pounds of pork, and two loaves of bread, would last three persons any length of time.

Previous to our journey's end, we were twelve hours without any sustenance, except wild onions; but fortunately we found on the sand about one hundred and forty birds eggs, which we boiled, and eagerly devoured, notwithstanding the greatest part had young birds in them, with small down on their bodies.

[177] On our arrival at the fort, the commanding officer rallied us on our attempt; and taking my friend aside, advised him either to return to Montreal, or go up to Niagara, as he was sure he was not equal to the fatigue of an Indian ²¹⁶life. He followed the officer's advice, and left me at the fort, which I soon afterwards quitted, and went down to Montreal; from thence I got a conveyance to Quebec; and being greatly distressed, applied to Lord Dorchester for relief, who generously directed his aid de camp to accompany me to Lieut. General Hope,[116] and strongly recommended me to his notice, to be employed in an Indian capacity. Being in some measure relieved, and supplied with a few dollars and other necessaries, I was sent up to Cataraqui.

I left Quebec, and arrived at Montreal on the 14th of July: the next day I pursued my journey on foot, but seeing two Indians of my acquaintance in a canoe, and having some money in my pocket to buy rum, I hired them to convey me to Cataraqui, and in our way we killed plenty of game.

On the 19th of August I delivered my credentials to the proper officer, but he could not render me any service; however, he recommended me, by letter, to his friend at Carlton Island, where Sir John Johnson[117] was ²¹⁷waiting for a vessel to convey him to Niagara,

to hold a council with the Indians: fortunately I procured an interview with him, and communicating to him my situation, he ordered me to be in readiness to assist as interpreter at his return. On the 18th of September, Sir John Johnson met us at the head of the bay of Kenty; the instant the Indians heard of his arrival, they saluted him with a discharge of small arms, and having received some rum, they danced and sung all night [178] their war songs; one of them I particularly noticed, which was to the following effect:—

“At last our good father is arrived, he has broken the small branches, and cleared his way to meet us. He has given us presents in abundance, and only demands this large bed (meaning a considerable tract of land which was described on a map).”

At twelve o'clock the next day a council was held, and Sir John laid his map before them, desiring a tract of land from Toronto to Lake Huron. This the Indians agreed to grant him, and the deed of gift being shewn them, it was signed by the chiefs' affixing the emblem, or figure of their respective totams, as their signatures.

Sir John Johnson then left them, and embarked for Cataraqui, the capital of the loyalist settlements.

Previous to his departure, I made him more fully acquainted with my distressed situation and procured from him a temporary supply, which enabled me to go down 218 to the third Township in the Bay of Kenty, [118] where I stayed with my loyalist friends till the spring of 1787; during which time I had frequent opportunities of making observations on the flourishing state of the new settlements.

The settlements of loyalists in Canada, bid fair to be a valuable acquisition to Great Britain; and in case of a war with the United States, will be able to furnish not only some thousands of veteran troops, but a rising generation of a hardy race of men, whose principles during [179] the last war stimulated them to every exertion, even at the expence of their property, families, and friends, in support of the cause they so warmly espoused. There was, however, when I resided in the country, one cause of complaint, which, though it may not immediately affect the welfare and prosperity of the present inhabitants, or prevent an

increase of population, in proportion to the unlocated lands, is big with impending danger, and which, for the satisfaction of the public, I shall endeavour to explain.

All the land from Point au Baudet (the beginning of the loyalist settlements on the River St. Laurence), to the head of the bay of Kenty, which at this period I am informed, contains at least ten thousand souls, is said to be liable to the old feudal system of the French seigneuries; the lords of which claim title to receive some rent, or exercise some paramount right, which, though it may be at present very insignificant, and which perhaps may never be insisted on, renders every man dependent on the lord of the manor, and, in process of time, as land becomes more valuable, the raising these rents, or the exercise of these rights, may occasion frequent disputes: I think therefore, with submission to our government, that as many hundreds of Americans are now settled there, and doubtless many more may occasionally migrate from the United States, either from being disgusted with the polity of the country, or from an idea of reaping greater benefits as subjects of Great Britain, it behoves us to remove every obstacle of subserviency, and either by purchase, or any other mode Administration shall think fit to adopt, render all the lands in Canada, granted to loyalist subjects, or others who have, or may voluntarily take the oaths of allegiance, as free as those in Nova Scotia.[119]

[180] Men who have been engaged in their country's cause from the best of principles, should have every possible indulgence; and in proportion as they have been deprived of comforts by the desolation of war, they should be recompensed without any partial restrictions, and the remainder of their days rendered as happy as the government they live under can make them.

The population of these new settlements, and their parallel situation with Fort Oswegatche, Carleton Island, Oswego, and Niagara, evince, perhaps, more forcibly than ever, the propriety of retaining these barriers in our possession, which, in the former part of this work, I have fully explained; and as the third Township alone (which is nine miles square) contained, in the year 1787, 220 about seventeen hundred inhabitants, it is difficult to say what number of valuable subjects that country may hereafter produce; certain it is, that it is capable of supporting multitudes, as the land is in general fertile, and on an average produces about thirty bushels of wheat per acre, even in the imperfect manner in which it is cleared, leaving all the stumps about three feet high, and from five to ten trees on an acre. This mode of clearing is in fact absolutely necessary, because new cultivated lands in

hot climates require shelter, to prevent the scorching heat of the sun, which, in its full power, would burn up the seed. It has also been found expedient in stony ground to let the stones remain, as they retain a moisture favorable to vegetation.

In the month of May I left the new settlements, and went down to Montreal, and from thence to Quebec, where I waited on Lord Dorchester, but could not gain admittance. I was afterwards informed [181] that his lordship was indisposed. I then went to Lieut General Hope's, but he had embarked for England.

So many mortifying disappointments affected me very sensibly, but as discouragements generally encreased my exertions, I was more assiduous in my endeavours to live, and whilst I was contriving schemes for future support, I received a supply from a friend: so seasonable a relief braced up all my nerves, and I felt a pleasure that can scarce be conceived by any but such as have experienced hardships and difficulties similar to mine.

My heart being cheered, and every gloomy thought dispersed, I determined to leave the country whilst I had money in my pocket. Having found another friend to sign a pass, I went on board a ship then lying in the River St. Laurence, on the 25th of October, and arrived in 221London the beginning of December following, rejoiced at again setting foot on my native shore.

Having finished the historical part of my work, I have only to solicit the candid indulgence of the public for any literary errors I may have been guilty of; and with great respect to convey to them an humble hope that the Voyages and Travels, together with the Vocabulary subjoined, may not be found totally unworthy their attention.

223

VOCABULARY

English Esquimeaux

Arrow Kátso

Bow Petíksick

Boat Kágak
 Dog Mické, or Tímitok
 Eye Killick, or Shik
 Egg Manneguk
 Ear Tehiu
 Four (number) Missílagat
 Foot Itikak
 Hair Nutshad
 Heaven Taktuck, or Nabugákshe
 Head Níakock
 Knife Shavié
 Moon Tácock
 Oar Pácotick
 One (number) Kombuc
 Sun Shíkonac, or Sakáknuc
 Two (number) Tígal
 Three (number) Ké
 Rain Kíllaluck
 Tooth Ukak
 Water Sillakákto

N. B. Esquimeau, in the singular Number, means an Eater of raw Flesh.

224

[184] English Iroquois

One Uskat
 Two Tekkeny
 Three Aghsey

Four Kayeery

Five Wisk

Six Yàyak

Seven Tsyàdak

Eight Sadégo

Nine Tyoughtow

Ten Oyéry

Eleven Oyéry uskat yawàrey

Twelve Oyéry tekkeny yawàrey

Thirteen Oyéry aghsey yawàrey

Fourteen Oyéry kayeery yawàrey

Fifteen Oyéry wisk yawàrey

Sixteen Oyéry yàyak yawàrey

Seventeen Oyéry tsyàdak yawàrey

Eighteen Oyéry sadégo yawàrey

Nineteen Oyéry tyoughtow yawàrey

Twenty Towwaghsey

Twenty one Towwaghsey uskat yawàrey

Twenty two Towwaghsey tekkeny yawàrey

Twenty three Towwaghsey aghsey yawàrey

Twenty four Towwaghsey kayeery yawàrey

Twenty five Towwaghsey wisk yawàrey

225

[185] Algonkin Chippeway

Payjik Payshik

Ninch Neesh

NissooNeesswoy

Neoo Neon

Naran Narnan

Ningootwassoo Negutwosswoy

Ninchowassoo Neeshswosswoy

Nissowassoo Swosswoy

Shongassoo Shangosswoy

Metassoo Metosswoy

Metassoo ashy payjik Metosswoy asshea payshik

Metassoo ashy ninch Metosswoy asshea neesh

Metassoo ashy nissoo Metosswoy asshea neesswoy

Metassoo ashy neoo Metosswoy asshea neon

Metassoo ashy naran Metosswoy asshea narnan

Metassoo ashy ningootwassoo Metosswoy asshea negutwosswoy

Metassoo ashy ninchowassoo Metosswoy asshea neeshswosswoy

Metassoo ashy nissowassoo Metosswoy asshea swosswoy

Metassoo ashy shongassoo Metosswoy asshea shangosswoy

Ninchtànà Neesh tanner

Ninchtànà ashy payjik Neesh tanner asshea payshik

Ninchtànà ashy ninch Neesh tanner asshea neesh

Ninchtàna ashy nissoo Neesh tanner asshea neesswoy

Ninchtàna ashy neoo Neesh tanner asshea neon

Ninchtàna ashy naran Neesh tanner asshea narnan

226

[186] English Iroquois

Twenty six Towwaghsey yàyak yawàrey

Twenty seven Towwaghsey tsyàdak yawàrey

Twenty eight Towwaghsey sadégo yawàrey

Twenty nine Towwaghsey tyoughtow yawàrey

Thirty Aghsey newaghsey

Thirty one Aghsey newaghsey uskat yawàrey

Thirty two Aghsey newaghsey tekkeny yawàrey

Thirty three Aghsey newaghsey aghsey yawàrey

Thirty four Aghsey newaghsey kayeery yawàrey

Thirty five Aghsey newaghsey wisk yawàrey

Thirty six Aghsey newaghsey yàyak yawàrey

Thirty seven Aghsey newaghsey tsyàdak yawàrey

Thirty eight Aghsey newaghsey sadégo yawàrey

Thirty nine Aghsey newaghsey tyoughtow yawàrey

Forty Kayeery newaghsey

Forty one Kayeery newaghsey uskat yawàrey

[187] Algonkin Chippeway

Ninchtàna àshy ningootwassoo Neesh tanner asshea negutwosswoy

Ninchtàna àshy ninchowassoo Neesh tanner asshea neeshswosswoy

Ninchtàna àshy nissowassoo Neesh tanner asshea swosswoy

Ninchtàna àshy shongassoo Neesh tanner asshea shangosswoy

Nisso metàna Neess semmettenner

Nissoo metàna àshy payjik Neess semmettenner asshea payshik

Nissoo metàna àshy ninch Neess semmettenner asshea neesh

Nissoo metàna àshy nissoo Neess semmettenner asshea neesswoy

Nissoo metàna àshy neoo Neess semmettenner asshea neon

Nissoo metàna àshy naran Neess semmettenner asshea narnan

Nissoo metàna àshy ningootwassoo Neess semmettenner asshea negutwosswoy

Nissoo metàna àshy ninchowassoo Neess semmettenner asshea neeshswosswoy

Nissoo metàna àshy nissowassoo Neess semmettenner asshea swosswoy

Nissoo metàna àshy shongassoo Neess semmettenner asshea shangosswoy

Neoo metàna Neon mettenner

Neoo metàna àshy payjik Neon mettenner asshea payshik

English Iroquois

Forty two Kayeery newaghsey tekkeny yawàrey

Forty three Kayeery newaghsey aghsey yawàrey

Forty four Kayeery newaghsey kayeery yawàrey

Forty five Kayeery newaghsey wisk yawàrey

Forty six Kayeery newaghsey yàyak yawàrey

[188]

Forty seven Kayeery newaghsey tsyàdak yawàrey

Forty eight Kayeery newaghsey sadégo yawàrey

Forty nine Kayeery newaghsey tyoughtow yawàrey

Fifty Wisk newaghsey

Fifty one Wisk newaghsey uskat yawàrey

Fifty two Wisk newaghsey tekkeny yawàrey

Fifty three Wisk newaghsey aghsey yawàrey

Fifty four Wisk newaghsey kayeery yawàrey

Fifty five Wisk newaghsey wisk yawàrey

Fifty six Wisk newaghsey yàyak yawàrey

229

Algonkin Chippeway

Neoo metàna àshy ninch Neon mettenner asshea neesh

Neoo metàna àshy nissoo Neon mettenner asshea neesswoy

Neoo metàna àshy neoo Neon mettenner asshea neon

Neoo metàna àshy naran Neon mettenner asshea narnan

Neoo metàna àshy ningootwassoo Neon mettenner asshea negutwosswoy

[189]

Neoo metàna àshy ninchowassoo Neon mettenner asshea neeshswosswoy

Neoo metàna ashy nissowassoo Neon mettenner asshea swosswoy

Neoo metàna ashy shongassoo Neon mettenner asshea shangosswoy

Naran metàna Nar mettenner

Naran metàna ashy payjik Nar mettenner asshea payshik

Naran metàna ashy ninch Nar mettenner asshea neesh

Naran metàna ashy nissoo Nar mettenner asshea neesswoy

Naran metàna ashy neoo Nar mettenner asshea neon

Naran metàna ashy naran Nar mettenner asshea narnan

Naran metàna ashy ningootwassoo Nar mettenner asshea negutwosswoy

230

English Iroquois

Fifty seven Wisk newaghsey tsyàdak yawàrey

Fifty eight Wisk newaghsey sadégo yawàrey

Fifty nine Wisk newaghsey tyoughtow yawàrey

Sixty Yàyak newaghsey

Sixty one Yàyak newaghsey uskat yawàrey

Sixty two Yàyak newaghsey tekkeny yawàrey

Sixty three Yàyak newaghsey aghsey yawàrey

Sixty four Yàyak newaghsey kayeery yawàrey

Sixty five Yàyak newaghsey wisk yawàrey

[190]

Sixty six Yàyak newaghsey yàyak yawàrey

Sixty seven Yàyak newaghsey tsyàdak yawàrey
Sixty eight Yàyak newaghsey sadégo yawàrey
Sixty nine Yàyak newaghsey tyoughtow yawàrey

Seventy Tsyàdak newaghsey
Seventy one Tsyàdak newaghsey uskat yawàrey

231

Algonkin Chippeway

Naran metànà ashy ninchowassoo Nar mettenner asshea neeshswosswoy

Naran metànà ashy nissowassoo Nar mettenner asshea swosswoy

Naran metànà ashy shongassoo Nar mettenner asshea shangosswoy

Ningootwassoo metànà Negutwoss semmettenner

Ningootwassoo metànà ashy payjik Negutwoss semmettenner asshea payshik

Ningootwassoo metànà ashy ninch Negutwoss semmettenner asshea neesh

Ningootwassoo metànà ashy nissoo Negutwoss semmettenner asshea neesswoy

Ningootwassoo metànà ashy neoo Negutwoss semmettenner asshea neon

Ningootwassoo metànà ashy naran Negutwoss semmettenner asshea naran

[191]

Ningootwassoo metànà ashy ningootwassoo Negutwoss semmettenner asshea
negutwosswoy

Ningootwassoo metànà ashy ninchowassoo Negutwoss semmettenner asshea
neeshswosswoy

Ningootwassoo metànà ashy nissowassoo Negutwoss semmettenner asshea
swosswoy

Ningootwassoo metàna ashy shongassoo Negutwoss semmettenner asshea shangosswoy

Ninchowassoo metàna Neeshswoss semmettenner

Ninchowassoo metàna ashy payjik Neeshswoss semmettenner asshea payshik

232

English Iroquois

Seventy two Tsyàdak newaghsey tekkeny yawàrey

Seventy three Tsyàdak newaghsey aghsey yawàrey

Seventy four Tsyàdak newaghsey kayeery yawàrey

Seventy five Tsyàdak newag[h]sey wisk yawàrey

Seventy six Tsyàdak newaghsey yàyak yawàrey

Seventy seven Tsyàdak newaghsey tsyàdak yawàrey

Seventy eight Tsyàdak newaghsey sadégo yawàrey

Seventy nine Tsyàdak newaghsey tyoughtow yawàrey

[192]

Eighty Sadégo newaghsey

Eighty one Sadégo newaghsey uskat yawàrey

Eighty two Sadégo newaghsey tekkeny yawàrey

Eighty three Sadégo newaghsey aghsey yawàrey

Eighty four Sadégo newaghsey kayeery yawàrey

Eighty five Sadégo newaghsey wisk yawàrey

Eighty six Sadégo newaghsey yàyak yawàrey

233

Algonkin Chippeway

Ninchowassoo metàna àshy ninch Neeshswoss semmettenner asshea neesh

Ninchowassoo metàna àshy nissoo Neeshswoss semmettenner asshea neesswoy

Ninchowassoo metàna àshy neoo Neeshswoss semmettenner asshea neon

Ninchowassoo metàna àshy naran Neeshswoss semmettenner asshea narnan

Ninchowassoo metàna àshy ningootwassoo Neeshswoss semmettenner asshea
negutwosswoy

Ninchowassoo metàna àshy ninchowassoo Neeshswoss semmettenner asshea
neeshswosswoy

Ninchowassoo metàna àshy nissowassoo Neeshswoss semmettenner asshea swosswoy

Ninchowassoo metàna àshy shongassoo Neeshswoss semmettenner asshea
shangosswoy

[193]

Nissowassoo metàna Swoss semmettenner

Nissowassoo metàna àshy payjik Swoss semmettenner asshea payshik

Nissowassoo metàna àshy ninch Swoss semmettenner asshea neesh

Nissowassoo metàna àshy nissoo Swoss semmettenner asshea neesswoy

Nissowassoo metàna àshy neoo Swoss semmettenner as[s]hea neon

Nissowassoo metàna àshy naran Swoss semmettenner asshea narnan

Nissowassoo metàna àshy ningootwassoo Swoss semmettenner asshea
negatwosswoy

234

English Iroquois

Eighty seven Sadégo newaghsey tsyàdak yawàrey

Eighty eight Sadégo newaghsey sadégo yawàrey

Eighty nine Sadégo newaghsey tyoughtow yawàrey

Ninety Tyoughtow newaghsey

Ninety one Tyoughtow newaghsey uskat yawàrey

Ninety two Tyoughtow newaghsey tekkeny yawàrey

Ninety three Tyoughtow newaghsey aghsey yawàrey

Ninety four Tyoughtow newaghsey kayeery yawàrey

Ninety five Tyoughtow newaghsey wisk yawàrey

Ninety six Tyoughtow newaghsey yàyak yawàrey

[194]

Ninety seven Tyoughtow newaghsey tsyàdak yawàrey

Ninety eight Tyoughtow newaghsey sadégo yawàrey

Ninety nine Tyoughtow newaghsey tyoughtow yawàrey

One hundred Uskat towaneyow

Two hundred Tekkeny towaneyow

Three hundred Aghsey towaneyow

Four hundred Kayeery towaneyow

235

Algonkin Chippeway

Nissowassoo metànà ashy ninchowassoo Swoss semmettenner asshea neeshswosswoy

Nissowassoo metànà ashy nissowassoo Swoss semmettenner asshea swosswoy

Nissowassoo metànà ashy shongassoo Swoss semmettenner asshea shangosswoy

Shongassoo metànà Shangoss semmettenner

Shongassoo metànà ashy payjik Shangoss semmettenner asshea payshik

Shongassoo metànà ashy ninch Shangoss semmettenner asshea neesh

Shongassoo metànà ashy nissoo Shangoss semmettenner asshea neesswoy

Shongassoo metànà ashy neoo Shangoss semmettenner asshea neon

Shongassoo metànà ashy naran Shangoss semmettenner asshea narnan

Shongassoo metànà ashy ningootwassoo Shangoss semmettenner asshea negutwosswoy

[195]

Shongassoo metànà ashy ninchowassoo Shangoss semmettenner asshea
neeshswosswoy

Shongassoo metànà ashy nissowassoo Shangoss semmettenner asshea swosswoy

Shongassoo metànà ashy shongassoo Shangoss semmettenner asshea shangosswoy

Metassoo metànà Negut wauk

Metassoo ninctànà metànà Neesh wauk

Metassoo nissoo metànà Neesswoy wauk

Metassoo neoo metànà Neon wauk

236

English Iroquois

Five hundred Wisk towaneyow

Six hundred Yàyak towaneyow

Seven hundred Tsyàdak towaneyow

Eight hundred Sadégo towaneyow

Nine hundred Tyoughtow towaneyow

One thousand Oyéry towaneyow

237

Algonkin Chippeway

Metassoo naran metànà Nar wauk

Metassoo ningootwassoo metànà Negutwoss wauk

Metassoo ninchowasso metànà Neeshswoss wauk

Metassoo nissowassoo metànà Swoss wauk

Metassoo shongassoo metànà Shangoss wauk

Metassoo metassoo metànà Metosswoy kitchee wauk

238

A TABLE OF WORDS

[196] Shewing, in a variety of Instances, the Difference as well as Analogy between the Algonkin and Chippeway Languages, with the English Explanation.

English	Algonkin	Chippeway
---------	----------	-----------

To abandon, or forsake	Packiton	Packitan
------------------------	----------	----------

To arrive at a place Takouchin Takooshin

To assist Mawinewah Mawinewah

To alter, or change Miscoush Mishcoot

To amuse, or play Packeguay Athtergain

To beat, or bruise Packité Packettywaun

To believe Tilerimah, or tikerimah Indenendum gwoyack

To be willing Wisch Cannar, or cunner

To call Tychintkaw Nandootum

To carry Petou, or peta Keemarjemet

To dance Nemeh Nemeh

To do, or make Toshiton Ojeytoon, or Tojeytoon

[197]

To dwell, or stay Tapia Appay

To drink Minikwah Minniquah

To eat Wissin Wissinnin

239

To freeze Kissim Mushcowwartin

To fall Ponkisin Ponkissin

To find Nantounewaw Warbermeco

To go by water Pimmiscaw Pamiskian, or pemiskar

To go by land Teja Papamôtay

To give Millaw Darmissey

To govern Tibarimaw Tibarimaw

To have Tindala Arwayyor

To hunt Keoussey Geosay

To hate Shinguerimaw Nesharquish

To keep Ganawerimaw Gannewainnemar

To kill Nesa Gunnesar

To know Kekerindan Keecannawendan

To love, or love Sakiar Zargay, or zargeytoon

To lose Packilague Winnetoon

To laugh Kapy Pawpy

To lie down Weepemaw Neperhan

To meet Nantoonewar Neewatch

[198]

To marry Weewin Tuckunnumkewish

To make water Minsy Meesesay

To make fire, & cook Pootawee Pooterway chebockwoy

To pay Tipaham Guddyparhan

240 To please Mirowerrindan Mirrowerrindan

To perspire Matootoo Matootoo

To run Pitcheba Squamich

To row Pimisca Pemishkar

To sit down Mantippy Mantetappy

To seek Nantawerima Warcharch

To sing Sheshin Najemoon

To steal Kemootin Keemôtyan

To sleep Nepa Nepan

To smoke a pipe Saggasoy Suggersoy

To speak Galoola Debarchim, or debarchemon

To see Wabemo Wabemat, or wabemor

To take Takoonan Tarpenan

To think Tilelindan Indenendum, or indenind

To tell Teta Gudjey

To throw away, or repudiate Webenan Waybenan

[199]

To understand Nistotawa Neesstootewar

To vex Iskatissey Annascartisey, or nishcartisey

To walk, or go Pemousse Pamôsay

To win Packitan Warmatt

Axe Ajackwet Ajackquoit
Above, or high Spimink Ishpemeg
After, or afterwards Mipidach Ningoot
And Gaye, or mipigaye Ashea
Another Coutak Ningootch
Again, or yet Menawatch Meenewatch
All Kakina Cockinnor
Always, wherever Kakeli Cargoneek, or memarmo

Breech clout Kepokitty kousah Oncean
Beard Mischiton Opeewyesky
Barrel Ayoentagun Owentagun
Ball, or large shot Alwin Kitchee anwin
Bottle Sheshegouay Môtay
BeaverAmik Amik
Beaver skin Appiminiquy Appiminiquy
Body Yao Yoe

[200]

Blankets Wabiwyah Waperwoyan
Breech Miskousah Peckqueen dorsow
Bear Mackquah Mackquah
Bear cub Makons Mackconce, or Mackquaconce
Bread, or flour Paboushikan Pockquoisigan
Broth, or soup Wabou Shoanarboop
Bag Maskimout Muchcomat
Blood Miskoo Misquy

Bark bowl, or cup Oulagan Onagun

Belly Mishemout Ishquamach

Brother Necanish Shemayn

242Bowels Olakick Onuggesh

Birds, or fowl Pilé Pinneyshis

Because Mewinch Mewinch

Black Negao Mackcutty

Big Mentitoo Menditoo

Coats Capotewian Piskawagan

Canoe Cheeman Cheeman

Companion, or friend Neechee Neejee, or Neecarnis

Captain, or chief Okemaw Okemaw, or Ojemaw

Captain, or head warrior Kitchee okemaw semauganish Kitchee Okemaw

Child, or children Bobeloshin Queebesince

Courage Taguamissi Taguamissy, or Haguamissy

[201]

Covetous Sasakissy Sazargesay

Cold Kekatch Geessennar

Duck, wild Sheeship Sheeshib

Dust Pingway Pingo

Deer Awaskesh Awaskesh

Dog Alim Anim

Dog, puppy Alimons Animonce

Day, or days Okonogat Ogunnegat

Dart	Sheshikwee	Aysquish
Dish	Mackoan	Mackoan
Dead	Neepoo	Neepoo
Devil, or Bad Spirit	Matchee Mannitoo	Matchee Mannitoo
Dance of Savages	Sheshequoy	Shessaquoy
243Drunk	Ousquibby	Squibby, or Osquibby
Done, it is done, or past	SheyarShyyar	

Elk	Mons	Moouse
Eye	Ouskinshik	Wiskinky
English	Outsakamink dachereni	Saggonash
Equal	Tabiscooch	Tabiscoach
Each	Paypayjik	Papayjit
Enough	Mimilic	Mee, or mimilic

Fire steel	Scoutykan	Squittykan, or Scotaycan
Fire	Scoute	Scotay or squitty

[202]

Fort	Wackaygan	Wakaygan
French	Mittigoush	Waymistergoash
Fish	Kickons	Kegonce
Fish, white	Attikamek	Artikkameg
Fox	Outagamy	Assinbo
Flesh of animals	Weass	Weass
Fork or prong stick	Nassawokwot	Cawmeek meteek
Father	Nooskay	Nocey

Fat, or he is fat Pimete Pimmethy

Female, or woman Ickwer Equoy

Full Mooshquenay Mooshquenay

Free, generous Walatissy Ajackquoy

Formerly Peraweego Maywisher

Far off Watso Awassa, or Awassa woyta

244

Girl Ickwessens Equoysince

Gun Paskeyseگان Baskeyzegan

Grass Myask Nepish, or mejask

Grapes Shoamin Minneshish

God, or Great Spirit Kitchee Mannitoo Kitchee Mannitoo

Gunpowder Pingo Mackate Mackcutty, or Pingo Mackcutty

Good Quelatch Nishshishshin

House, or hut Wikiwam Wigwaum

Hair, human Lissy Lissy

[203]

Hair, of beasts Pewall Opeeway

Heaven, or the other world Spiminkaquin Pockcan worrockey, or pockan tunnockey

Hare Wapoos Wapoos

Husband, or master of weakness Napema Nabaim

Head Ousteooan Eshtergoan

Heart Mishewah Oathty

Half Nabal Arbittar

Handsome Sasayga Sasayga

Home, or dwelling Entayank Ashemich

Hot Akeeshattay Geeshartay

Hungry Packatay Bocketty

Here Akonda, or akomanda Ashemich

How Tany Tawny

245How much, or how many? Tantasou, or taxnimilik? Tawnymilik?

Indian corn Metamin Medarmin

Iron Pewaby Pewabick

Island Minis Minnesey

Indians Ishinawbah Nishinnorbay

Immediately Webatch Webatch

Idle, or lazy KittimyKittim

Knife Mockoman Mokoman

Knife, crooked Coutagan Wakeckuman

[204]

Kettle, or pot Akikkons Akeek

Land Oustikan Onjee

Looking glasses Wabemo Warbemoon

Lake Kitchee Gammink Sakiegan

Letter Marseynaygan Marseynaygan

Leggons, or stockings Metass Mittasse

Light (clear) Vendao Meesharquoit

Long since Shashayay Sharshyyar

Little, small, few Wabeloosheins Pongay, or hagushenonce

Man Alisinape Ninnee

Moon, or night light Debikat Ikisy Geezus

Mistress, or wife Neremoossin Mentimoye

Merchandise Alokatchigan Huncushigon, or Annacotchigon

246Medicine Maskikik Maskikkee

Male Nape Ayarbey

Male deer, or stag Mecheway Ayarbey awaskesh

Much Nebela Nepewar, or gwotch

Needle to sew with ShabounekanShaboonegun

Nose Yatch Yotch

News Taypatchimoo, kan Mergummegat

Night Debbikat Debbikat

Near, or nigh Pechoowetch Payshew

[205]

Now Nongom Nogome

Never Kawicka Cawwickca, or cassawickca

No Ka Cawween, or ka

Nothing Kakaygoo Kakaygo

Not yet Kamasshy Kamarchy

Otter Nekeek Nekeek

Old, he was old Kewesheins Keewaency

Portage, or carrying place Cappatagan Onuggemeg

People, or nation Irenee Nondajewot

Paddle, or small oar Apway Abboy

Pike (a fish) Kenonjay Kenonjay

Peninsula Minnissin Minnissin

Peace Pekah Meecho

247Partridge Pilesiwee Peenay

Pipe Poygan Opoygan

Quick Welibik Annacook

Ring, for the finger Debelincheebeson Zenzeebisson

Rice, wild Malomin Menomon

Road Meekan Meekan

Rum, or brandy Scoutiwaboy Squittywabo, or scotaywabo

[206]

Rain Kemewan Kimmeevan

River Sepim Seepee

Roots of trees Oustikwees Watappy

Robe of peltry Ockola Woygan, or oakonus

Red Misquy Misquoy, or misquitty

Shirt Papakewean Parbockerwoyan

Spoon Mickwan Tamickquoin

Sword, or great knife Semagan Kitchee mokoman

Sense, to have sense Nebwacka Annaboycassey

Star Alan Annunk

Sturgeon Lamek Onnemay

Sea, or unbounded lake Agankitchee gammink Kitchee gammink

Stone Assin Assin

Spirit Mannitoo Mannitoo

248Sun, or great light Keesis Geesessey

Shoes (Indian) Mackisin Maukissin

Ship, or great canoe Kitchee cheeman Kitchee Naberquoin

Soldier, or warrior Semaganis Shemagonish

Smoke, or fire fog Pentakoe Keenarbittay

Summer, or spring Merockamink Menokemeg

Sick Outineous Aquoisee

Sad Talissimy Cushkendummerman

Strong Mashkawa Mushcowar

[207]

Teeth Tebit Weebit

To-morrow Wabank Warbunk

Tomahawk Agackwetons Warcockquoite

Tongue, human Ooton Ooton

Tobacco Sayma Assaymer

Tobacco pouch Kaspetagun Kispetawgun

Trees Meteek Meteek

There Mandadiby Woity, or awoity

Too much Ozam Ozome

Too little Ozame mangis Ozome pangay

Thank you Meegwatch Meegwotch

Truly Keket Kaygait

That MandaMaunder

Together Mamawee Marmo

Vermillion Oulamar Ozonnemon

Village Oudenank Narpoon

Water Nepee Nippee

249Winter Pepoon Bebone

Wolf Mahingan Mahingan

Wine, or blood red broth Shoemin aboo Mishquoy shoanarboop

Wind Loutin Noetting

Woods Nopemenk Menopemeg

War Nontobâly Mecartay

Weary, or tired Takoosy Nowwendayshon

[208]

Why Tanientien Cannatoo

Where Ta Aunday

Where is he? or where does he dwell? Tanepy appy Tannepy Appay

What is that? what? or what now? Waneweenay? Wàygonin?

Who is that? Waneweenay mabo? Hawaneeyau?

Whence Tannepy Tannepy

White Waby Warbishcar

Yellow Wazzo Jônia

Yes Mi, or Minkooty Angaymer, or Nangaymer

Yesterday Pitchylago Pitchynargo

250

[209] English Mohegan Shawanee

A bear Mquoh Mauquah

A beaver Amisque Amaquah

Eye Hkeesque Skesacoo

Ear Towohque Towacah

Fetch Pautoh Peatoloo

My grandfather Nemoghome Nemasompethau

My grandmother Nohhum Nocumthau

My grandchild Naughees Noosthethau

He goes Pumissoo Pomthalo

A girl Peesquausoo Sqauthauthau

House Weekumuhm Weecuah

He (that man) Uwoh Welah

His head Weensis Weenseh

His heart Utoh Otaheh

Hair Weghaukun Welathoh

Her husband Waughechew Wasechew

His teeth Wepeeton Wepeetalee

I thank you Wneeweh Neauweh

My uncle Nsees Neeseethau

I Neah Nelah

Thou Keah Kelah

We Neaunuh Nelauweh

Ye Keauwuh Kelaueh

Water Nbey Nippee

Elder sister Nmees Nemeethau

River Sepoo Thepee

252

[210] English Mohegan

Bear Mquoh

BeaverAmisque

Dead, he is dead Nboo, or Neepoo

Devil, or Bad Spirit Mtandou

Dress the kettle, (make a fire) Pootouwah

Eyes Ukeesquan

Fire Stauw

Give it him Meenuh

How Tuneh

House Weekumuhm

Go, or walk Pumisseh

Marry Weeween

River Sepoo

Shoes Mkissin

The sun Keesogh

Sit down Mattipeh

Water Nbey

Where Tehah

Winter Hpoon

Wood Metooque

N. B. The e final is not sounded except in monosyllables.

253

[211]Algonkin Chippeway

Mackquah Mackquah

Amik Amik

Nepoo Neepoo

Matchee Mannitoo Matchee Mannitoo

Poutwah Pooterway Chebockwoy

Ouskinshik Wiskinky

Scoute Scotay or Squitty

Millaw Darmissey

Tany Tawny

Wikiwam Wigwaum

Pemousse Pamosây

Wewin Tuckunnumkewish

Sepim Seepee

Mackisin Maukissin

Keesis Geessessey

Mantippy Mantetappy

Nepee Nippee

Ta Aunday

Pepoon Bebone

Meteeck Meteeck

254

[212]English Iroquois

Above Aynegun

Absent Yáckta ohárlogh

Abuse, to Henryotaxa

Accept, to láyner

Account, to Sastáyricey

Accuse, to Cúttergun

Add to Cayéntuck

Admire, to Sannagatcácktone

Advice Sattayéntack

Adultery Sáchequar

Afraid Sáquoy

Afternoon Nowwátone

Again Ségo

Agree, to Curywyyárley

Alike Sadáyyouth

All Aguágo

Ally Lanóha

Alone Yáckta oya

Always Chetko

Amuse, to Susqueeselon

Another Oya

Answer, to Sattróly

And Noke

A, an, or the Ne, ne

Bread Kanádaró

Black Agohoonsay

[213]

Dear Carnolelow

English Cherrihunságat

Father Luggoney

255

Gunpowder Ogánra

Give me Cassar

How much, or how many Toneego

Jacob Yárwek

King, or great chief Sachem

MoneyWisstar

Montreal Chocktyhargo

Or Neteas

Partridge Oquesses

Peter Gwider

Plenty Cúshcowait

Perhaps Togatt

Rose (a flower) Easel

Rum Skarat

[214]

Shot Onáya

Sugar Chekayter

Silver works Wisstar noolone

Thank you Yaown

There is Honerer

Understand, to Cockharonckar

Wise Satoákha

Wind Yowwetty

256Win, to Rowwennéhoo

WillingSenoocy

Wild Yáckta satoákha

Wife Sannatella

White Carárger

War Satterleyhone

Who Unghka

Was Ne

Water Oghnéga

Wine, or blood red soup Onéahháradáschhoúhtserákeri

Who was Ungka ne

What was Oghnihayadòtea

Where Caha

Virgin Hanághgwáyenden

[215]

Young Agúntelo

You Ecee

Yesterday Tyóúcktárlow

Yes Etho

Yellow Ajeenegwar

Year Atoori

Your health Honoroquennyee

257

[216] Names of Furs and Skins in English and French

English	French
---------	--------

Fat winter beaver	Castor gras d'hiver
-------------------	---------------------

Fat summer beaver	Castor gras d'été
-------------------	-------------------

Dry winter beaver	Castor secs d ´ hiver
Dry summer beaver	Castor secs d ´ été
Old winter beaver	Castor vieux d ´ hiver
Old summer beaver	Castor vieux d ´ été
Raw stag skins	Cerfs verts
Prepared stag skins	Cerfs passés
Rein deer skins	Caribous
Raw hind skins	Biches vertes
Prepared hind skins	Biches passées
Mush rats	Rats musques
Prepared roebuck skins	Chevreaux passés
Unprepared roebuck skins	Chevreaux verts
Tanned roebuck skins	Chevreaux tanés
Southern, or Virginia foxes	Renards du sud ou Virginie
White, from Tadousac, foxes	Renards blancs de Tadousac
Wolves	Loups de bois
Beaver eaters	Carcajous
Martens	Martres
Squirrels, black	Ecureuils, noirs
Squirrels, grey	Ecureuils, argentés

[217]

Fishers	Peccans
Bears	Ours
Bears, Cub	Oursons
Otters	Loutres
Cats	Chats

Lynx Loups cerviers

258 Foxes, red Renards, rouges

Foxes, cross Renards croisés

Foxes, black Renards noirs

Foxes, grey Renards argentés

Minks Visons, ou Fourtreaux

North Case Cat Pichoux du nord

South Case Cat Pichoux du sud

259

[218] Parts of the Human Body

English Chippeway

Ankle Warwích

Arm Aník

Arm, broken Késconeek

Back Oníckquick

Beard Opeewyésky

Belly Is´quamach

Blood Misqúy

Body Yoe

Bones Oakcan

Bowels Onúggesh

Brain Opin

Breath Nowwetting, or nowwettywich

Breech Peckqueen dorsow

Breast Wheyóe

Cheeks Warbím

Chin Utchwar

Eye Wiskínky

Eye that squints Annooch

Ear Nóndawar

[219]

Eyelid Péwyar

Eyebrow Gwátso

Face Meechaw

Fundament Meedséywort

Fingers Argátso

Foot, or feet Ozett

Gall Marchéw

Hand Armóche

Heart Oathty

Hair Lissy

260Head Eshtergóan

Hips Tarbatch

Head, bald Wematishtergóan

Knee Puttwar

Lips Meemoáche

Lungs Seegwa

Leg Ocárt

Liver Quinch

Mouth Meessey

Nails of fingers and toes Narb

Neck Shemmor

[220]

Nostrils Pecktópe

Nose Yotch

Navel Pinneck

Ribs Ashíngo

Skull Eshteroáthcan

Sinews Atteese

Skin Pokkikkin

Teeth Weebitt

Thighs Oquarme

Thumbs Mitchea

Throat Squissow

Toes Tarwárchewort

Tongue Ooton

Veins Weebórso, or neatissum

Wrist Annánk

261

[221] Names of Animals, &c.

Animal between a dog and a wolf Wabátch

Ants, and all small insects Mannetónce

Buck, or male deer Ayarbéy awashkesh

Beaver robe Amik woygán, or amik oakónus

Bear Mackquáh

Bear, cub Mackquacónce or mackónce

Beaver Amik

Beaver skin Appiminiquy

Beaver eater Quickwahay

Birds, all small Pennyshance

Buffalo Peshshekey

Cat, wild Peshshéw

Cat, tame Cúshecance

Crow Cark cark

Carp Narmáybin

Crane Kitchee cárbo

Duck, wild Sheshíb

Dog Anim

[222]

Dog, puppy Animónce

Deer Awashkesh

Elk Moouse

Eggs Wark

Eagle Meegeezes

Flesh of animals Weass

Fur of animals Oyan

262Feathers of birds Pequim

Fox Assínbo

Frog Muckkikkée

Fish Kegónce

Fisher Ochíck

Fowl, or birds Pénnyshis

Fish, white Artíkkameg

Goose, wild Neecárk

Hog Coocóoche

Hair of animals Opeeway

Hide of animals Weeyan

Hare Wapóos

Horse Ogashy

Loon Maunk

Marten Warbeshánce

[223]

Mink Shángwoitch

Musquash, or mush rat Háwoyzask

Otter Nekeek

Partridge Peenay

Pickeril Ogánce

Peltry, or robe made of fur Woygan

Pike Keenonjey

Plover Guéveshew

Racoon Asseeban

Skunk, or pole cat Sheecark

263Sturgeon Onnemay

Snakes Keenaypíckneeshey

Skin of animals Nink

Squirrel Opickquoy

Swan Kitchee meework

Tongue of animals Sawwétch

Tail of animals Warmeech

Turkey Weenecobbo

Trout Narmáyguiss

Wing of birds Gwimbítch

Wolf Mawhíngon

[224] Merchandise

Arm bands Kitchee wáybesun

Axe Ajáckquoit

Ball, or large shot Kitchee ánwin

Brass wire Pewarbickcónce

Beads Mannetoo menánce

Broaches Paunéa

Breech clout Oncean

Blanket Waperwóyan

Comb Penárquan

Coat Piskawágan

Canoe awl Meecóose

Fire steel Squíttycan

Finger ring Zenzéebisson

Gun flint Powwabickcóon

Gum Pickkéw

Gun Baskéyzegan

[225]

Gartering Arcoquóshergan

Gunpowder, or black dust Mackcutty, or mackcutty pingo

Gun worms Teakíagun

Hair plates Saggobánwan

Hawk bells Pewarbeneech

Horn Pendycutty

Hats Oweoathcoan

Kettle, or pot Akeek

265Knife, or knives Mókoman

Knife, crooked Wakéckuman

Lines for a net Shenowantágan

Leggons, or stockings Mittasse

Looking glasses Warbermoone

Needles Shaboonegun

Net for fishingAssubbub

Ribbons, or silk Sénnebar

Rum, or brandy Scótaywábo, or Squittaywábo

Spear Eshcan

Shot Sheesheebanwín

Stroud, blue Mannetoo woygán

[226]

Stroud, red Míshwoygán

Shirt Parbóckerwoyán

Tomahawk Warcóckquoite, or Warcóckquoite Opoygan

Tobacco Assáymer

Thread Assúb

Vermilion Ozonnemon

Wristbands Annán

266

Army, or number of people assembled together Barthtiárje

Adultery Keemótegun

Air Shaquoit

Ashes Pamótay wáybegun

Arch (part of a circle) Nondárgay

Aunt Ergúshemin

Absent Cáwween áppay

All Cockinnór

Abuse, to abuse Mecártay

All together Cockinnór marmó

Alive Pemártus

Ashamed, to be ashamed Newemo

Any Apáckcan, or han

Alike, or equal Tabiscoach

Again, or yet Méenewatch

Alone, at, or only Aighter or unter

Always, or wherever Cargonéek, or memármo

After, or afterwards Ningoot

And Ashea

[228]

A and The Páyshik

Another Ningootch

Alone, or I myself Nin aighter

Above, or high I ´shpemeg

Also, too Guyyea

Book, letter, paper Marseynáygan

Bread, or flour Pockquoísigan

267Broth, or soup Shoanárboop

Branches of a tree Meetecónce

Brother Shemayn

Bark of a tree Wigwass

Bark, fire barkScótay wigwass

Boy Oskénáygay

Battle Shamishcart

Bag Múshcomat

Barrel Owentágun

Bridge Warmeek

Basket, or hand bowlWapátch

Bed Pëshshemo

Bottle Môtay

Bay, or road for vessels Assénjey

Box of wood, or bark, or run keg Meteek múshcomat, or muccuck

Blue Talónjay

Bald Parmín

Bad, or wicked Matchee

[229]

Bitter Matooch

Bright, or light Meeshárquoit

Barren, not bearing fruit Matchee wáybegun

Big, or great Menditoo

Black Mackcútty

Blind Warbermenéech

Broad Hamatchey

Bottom Haundwatchey

Busy U'ngwoitch

Because Mewinch

But Moszáck

By and by Panimár

268Below Opármey

Beyond, or far of Awassa, or awassa woy' ta

Before Awáshshemon

Behind Ningôochum

Between Icktum guichum

Besides Metách, or menoche

Canoe Cheeman

Country Tunnockáy

Chief, or captain Ojémaw, or O' kemaw

Cup, or bark bowl Onágun
 Cloud, or grand cover Kenárbo
 Cable, or big rope Kitchee assubbub
 Copper, iron, or brass Pewárbick
 Crowd Nepewárnoondájewort
 [230]
 Cabin, hut, or house Wigwaum
 Current of water Sedgwin
 Companion, or friend Neejee, or Neecarnis
 Courage Haguámissey or Taguámissey
 Child, or children Queebesince
 Corn, Indian Medármin
 Covetous, or greedy Sazárgesay
 Calm Annywattin
 Cunning Matchee weebézesay
 Coarse (not fine) Matchee arpeech
 Cold Geessennar
 Come here Ondass
 Can it, is it, was it Nar
 Carrying place, or portage Onúggemeg
 269
 Devil, or Bad Spirit Matchee Mannitoo
 Daughter Indongway, or Darniss
 Dust, or powder Pingo
 Day, fine Meeno geesshegat
 Day, bad Matchee geesshegat

Day, or days Ogúnnegat

Day, dawn of Thurénsera

Dart Aysquish

Dew Misquoitch

Debt, or trust Marsennahatch, or Marsennáygan

Door, shut the door Squendum

Dish Mackcóan

[231]

Down (on the ground) Doutch

Dear, or too much Ozóme

Done, gone, or past Shyyár, or shárshyyar

Dark Onárgushey

Drunk Squibby, or Osquibby

Dressed, or ripe Keejetty

Drowsy, (I am drowsy) Nepârhar

Dry, or thirsty Sparchtay

Deaf Chartch

Dead Nepoo

Deep Anneycheewoatch

Edge Gatsotes

Enemy, or bad heart Matchee Oathty

English Saggonash

Earth Mattoyash

Easy Meenwéndesay

Enough Mee

270Empty Cawween mooshkenay

Equal, or alike Tabiscoach

Each Papay´jit

Flour, or bread Pockquoísigan

Fat, oil, or grease Pimmethy

Food Mejimmim

Fever Mishquoishártay

Fear, to fear, he is afraid Keezáycus

[232]

Fruit Pinneesh

Feast Wisseneet

Friend, or companion Neejee, or Necárnis

Fool, he is a fool Keepártesee

Flood of water Chingwim

Family Nepewoajánis

Father Nócey

French, or builders of vessels Waymístergoash

Fathom (a measure) Euníck

Female, or woman E´quoy

Fork, or prong stick Cávmeek meeteek

Fire Scótay, or squitty

Flint stone Pewarmickcoon

Fort, or tower Wakáygon

Fond, I am fond Nezárgea

Free, or generous Ajáckquoy

Fine (not coarse) Arpeech

Few Memárjis

Fresh (not stale) Meecheeweass

Full Mooshquenay

Formerly, long time ago Maywísher

271

Grease, fat, or oil Pimmethy

Grapes Minnishish

Girl E´quoysince

God, or Great Spirit Kitchee Mannitoo

Gold, or fine yellow metal Kitchee jónia

[233]

Great, good Kitchee, or nishshishshín

Green Achíb

Great, or big Menditoo

Globe, the earth Warbegún

Gone, past, or done Shyyar, or sharshyyar

Harbour Pejárcan

Health Pemártus

Herb, or grass Nepísh, or mejásk

Hell, or place of bad spirits Kitchee squíttung

Half, or part Arbittár

Home, or dwelling A´shemich

Hill Anneech

Husband, or master of weakness Nabaim

Hole March

Huckleberries Shóamin

Hard, cruel; it is hard or cruel Sánnegat

Handsome Sasay´ga

Heavy Pestérquan

Hot, or warm Geeshártay

Hungry, thin, lean Bócketty

He, him, she, or her Ween

Here Omár, or owáy

How, or how do you do? Waygush, or way way

272How many, or how much Tawnimilik

Here and there Pay payshik

[234]

Have, had Arhtty

High, or above I´shpemeg

Island Min´nesey

Ice Mequárme

Indians Nishinnorbay

Journey, to go a journey Marchián

Justice, or truth Gwoyack

Idle, or lazy Kíttim

Jealous Pejármoach

I, me, or my Nin, nee, or nee, nee

I, myself, or alone Nin aighter

If Késhpin

Indeed Hapádgey

Immediately, or very soon Weebátch

In Pendeek

It is true, or right, or very well Kaygait, kay, or meegwoyack

I have Kaygo

I have not Ka, kaygo

Is it, was it, can it Nar

Knot of wood Mushqueewórmeteek

King, or great chief Gósenan

Lake Sakíegan

Lightning, or quick fire Squitty annacook

[235]

Loss, to lose Winnetoon

273 Leaves Nepeech

Life Noochimmoin

Love, to love Zárgay, or zargeytoon

Land Onjee

Lean, hungry, or thin Bócketty

Little, small Pongay

Light (not heavy) Cávween pestérquan

Light, or bright Meeshárquoit

Lazy, or idle Kíttim

Last Ingwitch, or awass

Long Keenónje

Lame Armooch

Low Appywick

Long since Sharshyyar

Lately, or now Nogóme

Lewd, or unwise Cáwween annobóycassey

Male Ayarbéy

Middle Amáng

Music Agummeweech

Merchandize Huncúshigon, or annacótchigon

Milk, or the sap of the breast Tootooshonárbo

Medicine Maskikkee

Mistress, or wife Mentimóyey

My wife, or mistress Mentimóyamish

Mouth Warbun

[236]

Moon Geezus

Mat made of rushes Woyzáskquish

Mother Ningay

274 Man Ninnee

Montreal (a town in Canada) Monyny´yank

Morning Keejay´p

Mountain Espeo´ckay

Mud Onjeech

Many Márnay

Much, or a great deal Népewar, or gwotch

Mine, belonging to me Weechópe

Make haste Weebittán, or ha weebittán

Me, my, or I Nin, nee, or nee, nee

News, or intelligence Mergummegat

Name Shenecazeau

Night Debbikat

Nest, bird's nest Wesshepátchta

Noise Tonbíngesay

Nothing, no, or not Cáuween, or Ka

New, or strange Nobeetch, or pockcan

Narrow Agússin

Near, or nigh Payshéw

Not yet Kámarchey

Now, or lately Nogóme

Never Cáuwickcá, or cássawickcá

[237]

Oil, fat, or grease; or to be fat Pímmethy

Old, he is old Keewáency

Out, or without Accochink

Of An

Oh! oh! Taw! waw!

275 Only, at, or alone Aighter, or unter

Our, us, or we Neennerwind

One, the, a, or an Páyshik

Pity, or sorrow Cushkéndum
 Part, or half Arbittár
 Pain Daggow´wemeech
 Plenty Cúshcowait
 Paint Zawnúm
 Peace Meecho
 Pipe Opóygan
 Portage, or carrying place Onúggemeg
 Peninsula Minnesin
 Poison, or the taste of the bad swelling Matchee pattso
 Paddle, or small oar A´bboy
 Priest, or Master of Life´s man Kitchee Mannitoo Ninnee
 Pack, or bundle of skins Meekintárgan
 Present, or gift Achímmey
 Pledge Assinjégo
 Price, what price, how many, or how much Andersoy
 [238]
 Pleasure Armeetso
 People, or nation Nondájewot
 Permission Gar
 Patient Ardátch
 Proof Chárno
 Poor Kitchee Mórgussey
 Proud Ish´pemeech
 Pregnant Mooshkey

276 Past, gone, done Shyyár, or sháshyyár

Perhaps Cánnebatch

Plural Woke

Quiet, all is quiet Súggermarsh

Quick Annacook

Rock weed, or tripe derôche Haw´wercoon

Rice, Indian Menómon

River Seepee

Robe made of peltry Woygán, or oakónus

Road Meekan

Raft of wood Nepewameteek

Rain Kimmeewan

Rocks Essíngo

Rushes Woyzásk

Roots of trees Watáppy

Roots, a figurative expression for the affections of the heart which entwine about each other Waterwawaddoossin

[239]

Rapid, or strong current of water Pówwetink

Ready Guy´oxim

Rotten Dadge

Round Omích

Red Misquitty, or mísquy

Rough Guachootch

Raw, or unripe Kakeejetty

Ripe, or dressed Keejetty

277

Stone Assín

Soup, or broth Shoanárboop

Sense, or understanding Annabóycassey

Sap of the breast, or milk Tootooshomarbo

Star Annúnk

Shame Acheek

Stranger Péwithay

Shade Angwoitch

Shell Atch

Sky Esh´pea

Sleep Nepán

Sugar, or sweet Seezeebóckquoit, or seezequar

Salt Sheotágan

Soldier, warrior, or brave man Shemágonish

Sister Shemay´nce

Strong, or strength Múshkowar

Summer, or spring Menókemeg

Stumps of trees Mátwort

[240]

Storm Matchee geeshegar

Slay, an Indian carriage Tarbinnáck

Spoon Támmickquoin

Son Jánis

Sand Dárjey

Ship, or great canoe Kitchee náberquoin

Shoes (Indian) Maukissin

Sword, or great knife Kitchee mókoman

Sea, or great unbounded lake Kitchee gammink

Smoke, or fire fog Keenárbittay

278Sail of a ship Kitchee náberquoin parbóckerwoyan

Snow Going

Sun, or great light Geessesessey

Soft Charbeech

Sad Cushkendummerman

Sorrow, or pity Cushkendum

Savage, or wild Matcheewa

Small, or littleHagúshenonce, or pongay

Sharp Weemátch

Smooth Narnín

Sour Nebítch

Sudden I ´shmick

Slow Kíttermish

Surprising Towwácktowar

Short Dáckquoy

Strange, or new Nobeetch, or pockan

[241]

Such Shenárgussey

Sick Aquoisee

She, her, he, or him Ween

Tower or fort Wakaygon

Truth, or justice Gwoyack

Trade Artawway

Trader Artawway winnin

Thunder Tarbishár

Tobacco pouch Kispetawgan

Thief; he is a thief Keemôtay

Trees, or wood Meteek

Thoughts Waybissay, or waybeezezay

Thing, or things Kaygoshish

279To-morrow Warbunk

Tame Jimmenin

Thin, hungry, or lean Bocketty

True; to be true Deb´woy

This, or that Mor, or morndar

They, them, or ye Weenewar

There, at that place Woity, or awoity

The, a, an, or one Páyshik

To Ojey

Thou, or you Keen, kee, or kee kee

Too little Ozóme pongay

Too, or also Guyyea

Too much Ozóme

[242]

Together Marmo

Thank you Meegwoitch

Urine Meessay

Valley Amarcheep

Virgin Quéwescence

Voice, or the echo of the breath Tarpoach

Village Narpoon

Unripe, or raw Kakeejetty

Unwise, or lewd Cáwween annaboycassey

Unlucky, or unfortunate Basqueenewar

Unjust, or wrong Cáwween gwoyack

Under Otárpeet

Unto Un´towarch

Upon Ish´carmooch

Very well, or it is true, or right Meegwoyyack, kay, or kaygait

280 Very soon, or immediately Weebatch

Us, we, our, all of us Neennerwind

Wife, or mistress Mentimoy´ey

Water Nippee

Wind Noetting

Wound Aquish

War, to go to war, to fight, or quarrel Mecártay

Woods Menópemeg

Wine, or blood red broth Misquoyshoanarboop

[243]

Whore, or bad woman Matchee móyamee

Winter, or year Bebóne

Well of water Sagoyb

Word Cáza

Wing Gwimbitch

Witness, you are a witness Ken´dersay

World, the other world Pockcan worroc´kay, or pockcan tunnoc´kay

Wide Packquoím

Weary, or tired Nowwenday´shon

Wild, or savage Matcheewa

Warm, or hot Geeshar´tay

Wet Neepeeweenoon

Willing, to be willing Can´nar, or cun´ner

White Warbishcár

Weak Cáwween mush´kowar

Wild Carnaboycus

We, us, or our Neennerwind

Who, or who is that? Way´nin

281What, or what now? Hawwaneeyaw, tar´nin, tar´neyau, or way´gonin

Where Aúnday

When, or whence Tan´nepy

Why Cannatoo

Wherever, or always Cargoneek, or memar´mo

Was it, is it, can it Nar

[244]

Young (offspring) Wiskon´kiskey

Yesterday Pitchynar´go

Young man, or men Doskeennerway´mug

Ye, they, or them Weennewar

Ye, your Kéennerwind

Yes Angay´mer, or Nan´gaymer

Yellow Jonia

Yet, or again Meenewatch

To amuse, or play Athtergain

To account Metashwárbermy

To approve; I approve Mornooch nezar´gay

To assist Mawwinnewah

To alter, or change Mishcoot

To affront Nishcar´teyan

To answer, or attend to Noneydone

To ask, I ask Nindooton, or nindootimond

To ascend Negádeja

To abandon, or forsake Pack´itan

To arrive at a place Takooshin

To arrive by land Keekeepejar´can

To arrive by water Sharshyyar´new´ebens

282To avoid Yaquoy

To attack Jimmim

To be vexed; I am vexed Nischcárteseyyan

[245]

To believe	Indenéndum gwoyack
To bawl	Tonbíngus
To be told	Ecárto
To begin	Ethetum war´march
To bend	Marchím
To be willing	Can´nar, or cun´ner
To betray all	Matchee arpeech chickwar´woke
To beat, or bruise	Packettywaum
To bring, or fetch	Nartín, or Petoon
To bind, or tie	Tackan´nin
To break, or tear	Bowwískar
To bite	Quoyjím
To build	Gowweájetoan
To barter	Gudgymárdat
To boil	Zepeeooch
To borrow	Carmatch´ey
To burn	Squitty árbach
To beg (you beg)	Keenandóton
To bathe	Nepewoy´awat
To be unconcerned, or indifferent about a thing	Mornooch towwárch

To cut Kiskejune

To call Nandootum

To choose Tucku´nnin

To cure Zársquoy

To catch	Keeásquin
To clean	Warbermeech
To chew	Wis ´ semeg
To come on	Ondash ´ in
To carry	Keemárjemet
To close	Dusquin
To converse	Debárchim, or debárchemon
To conquer	Ninnowátchim

To dance	Neméh
To drown	Nepewooch
To divide	Arbitórch
To dig	Achím
To dwell, or stay	Appay
To defend	Mushkáwesay
To dream	Charmeech
To drop	Char ´ quoy
To depart	Gamar ´ char
To drink	Mínniquah
To dip	Marchtooch

To elect	Keetárpeech
To embark	Boossin
To experience	Candan
To expect	Indenéndumsee
To eat	Wíssinnin

[247]

To freeze Mushcow´wartin

To find Warbermecó

To fast Bockettyneech

To fish Bockettywaun

To feel Tarpín, or peach

284To fall Pónkissin

To float Arnooch

To follow Weegewach´in

To forget; I forgot Newinnemeecoossay

To foretell; I foretell Newárbemoach

To fetch, or bring Nartín, or petoon

To fly Zeewitch

To grow Ameechet

To grind Ojít

To give Dármissey

To go, I will go Es´zar, or Gúddeszar

To go by water Pamískian, or pemískar

To go by land Papamôtay

To get up, or rise Goníshcar

To govern Tibárimaw

To hide Cannawéndan

To hold Jingwím

To hate Neshárquish

To hear Stootewar, or nondágaitch

To hurt Naw´wameetch

[248]

To hang Peechúganub

To hunt Géosay

To hit Mátwoit

To have Arwayyor

To interpret Kitchee ungwoitch undárjewort

To jump Abooch

To join, I join Neewo

285

To keep Gannewaínnemar

To kill Gúnnesar

To know, you know Keecannawéndan

To kick Achíp

To lend Mishcow´womeech

To love; love Zárgay, or zárgeytoon

To long to see, or wish Badásh

To lose; loss Wínnetoon

To lift Es´termeech

To learn E´shpermeech

To lead Acheech

To lie down Neparhan

To lie, a falsity Cáuween deb ´woy

To laugh Pawpy ´

To meet Neewatch

To make fire and cook Pooterway chebóckwoy

[249]

To make, or do Ojeytoon, or tojeytoon

To measure Apín

To melt Acheemeech

To mend Packquoy mowachin

To mix Packquoítso

To marry Tuckunnu ´mkewish

To make water Meesesay

To neglect Wínnemawatch

To own Guddypen ´dan, or dépendan

To open Pameech, or hapitch

To place, or put Acktone, or neech

286 To pull Ajárme

To pay Guddypa ´rhan

To please Mirrowerrindan

To push Meetso

To pass Pisquitch

To pierce Chagworm

To pinch Chímmeney

To promise Nebebeewoy

To perspire Matootoo

To return Tercus ´henan, or guabeecheway

To raise Ishpin

To receive Ajímmoach

[250]

To row Pemíshkar

To rejoice Papyan

To run Squamích

To read Daguoítso

To revolt Etummecártey

To ride Annyscoop

To release Pejárkemmet

To rise or get up Goníshcar

To repudiate, to throw away Waybenán

To shake Písquemeetch

To stand up Pásserquoin

To sail Pemíshcarmooch

To spit Warmar ´ch

To seek Warchar ´ch

To stand Andátch

To seize Ajímmenin

287To stab Batcheypehone

To split Chippauk

To shew Serpárgussey

To shut Cupperharne

To sing Nájemoon

To sink Nondágat

To satisfy Neminwaíndesee

To sit down, or sit you down Mantetáppy

To send Marchetoon

To smoke a pipe Sugger soy

[251]

To swim Squabeech

To see Wabemát, or wabemór

To speak Debárchim, or debárchemon

To smell laquíтч

To say; what did you say? when spoke angrily Ickeetóyan

To stink; you stink, or your sentiments are offensive Keeméchawich

To strike Keebárcham

To steal Keemótyan

To sleep Nepán

To tie, or bind Tackannin

To touch Chewwar

To tell Gudjey

To think In ´denind, or indenéndum

To throw away; to repudiate Waybenán

To take Tarpenán

288

To understand Neesstootewar

To view, or examine well my mind Wabindán

To vex Annascar ´tiskey, or nishcar ´tiskey

To win Warmatt

To watch Warbennís, or warbennét

To wash Zaquébenan

[252]

To work Tojeytoon, or gúsketoon

To want Guy ´yossey

To weep Marmy ´

To walk, or go Pamósay

To weigh Quois ´ciquen

To wish, or long to see Badásh

289

[253] Chippeway English

Abboy Paddle, or small oar

Ajack ´quoit Axe

Annaboy ´cassey Sense, or understanding

Aník Arm

Appimíniquy Beaver skin

Ayarbéy awashkesh Buck, or male deer

Amík Beaver

Assénjey Bay, (harbour for canoes)

Aním Dog

Animónce Dog, puppy

Aysquish Dart

Awashkësh Deer

Annooch Eye that squints

Argátso Fingers

Assínbo Fox

Artik ´kameg White fish

Arcoquosh ´ergan Gartering

Armoche Hand

Arbittár Half, or part

Anneech Hill

A ´shemich Home, or dwelling

Akeek Kettle, or pot

[254]

Ayarbéy Male

Annacótchigon, or huncúshigon Merchandise

Amáng Middle

Agúmmeweech Music

Assúbúb Net for fishing

290Assúb Thread

Achimmey Present, or gift

Assinjégo Pledge

An ´dersoy, or tawnymilik Price; what price? how many? how much?

Armeetso Pleasure

Ashin´go Ribs
Asseeban Racoon
Amik woygán, or amik oakónus Beaver robe

AquíshWound

Attees Sinews

Annúnk Star

Assín Stone

Acheek Shame

Angwoitch Shade

Atch Shell

Artawway Trade

Artawway winnin Trader

Assay´mer Tobacco

Amarcheep Valley

Annánk Wrist

Annán Wristbands

[255]

Annywattin Calm

Anneycheewoatch Deep

Achíb Green

Armooch Lamé

Ajack´quoy Free, or generous

Appywick Low

Agússin Narrow

Ardátch Patient

291Arpeech Fine, not coarse

Annacook Quick

Ac´quoisee Sick

Apackhan, or han Any

Awoíty, or woíty There; at a place

Aighter, or unter Only, at, alone

Aúnday Where

Angáymer, or nángaymer Yes

Awashemon Before

An Of

Awa´ss, or ingwitch Last

Awa´ssa, or awa´ssa woy´ta Beyond, or far off

Accochink Out, or without

Arthty Have, had

Ashea And

Athtergain To amuse, or play

Arbitórch To divide

Arwayyor To have

Achím To dig

An´yscoop To ride

[256]

Appay To dwell, or stay

Amooch To float

Acheech To lead

Ameechet To grow

Achíp To kick

Abooch To jump

Apín To measure

Ajárme To pull

Ajímmoach To receive

Ajímmenin To seize

Andátch To stand

292Ac´ktone, or neech To place, or put

Annascar´tissey, or nishcartissey To vex

Acheemeech To melt

Baskey´zegan Gun

Bebo´ne Winter, or year

Barthtiar´je Army, or number of people assembled together

Bócketty Hungry, thin, lean

Basqueenewar Unlucky, or unfortunate

Bowwis´kar To break, or tear

Bóckettyneech To fast

Batcheypehone To stab

Badásh To long to see, or wish

Bóckettywaun To fish

Boossin To embark

[257]

Cushkéndum Sorrow, or pity

Cheeman Canoe

Cúshecance Tame cat

Cark cark Crow

Chingwím Flood of water

Cáwmeek meteek Fork, or prong stick

Coocooshe Hog

Cúshcowait Plenty

Cáwween, or ka Nothing, no, not

Cáza Word

Cáwween áppay Absent

Cockinnór All

Cockinnór marmó All together

Chartch Deaf

293Cáwween mooshkenay Empty

Cwween pestérquan Light (not heavy)

Cáwween annaboy ´ cassey Lewd, or unwise

Charbeech Soft

Cushkendúmmerman Sad

Cáwween gwoyack Unjust, or wrong

Cáwween mush ´ kowar Weak

Carnayboy ´ cus Wild

Cargoneek, or memármo Always, wherever

Cáwwická, or cássawickcá Never

Cannatoo Why

Can ´ nebatch Perhaps

Chárno Proof

[258]

Can ´ ner, or cun ´ ner Willing, to be willing

Candan To experience

Charmeech To dream

Char´quoy To drop
 Cannawéndan To hide
 Cáwween deb´woy To lie (a falsity)
 Chagworm To pierce
 Chímmeney To pinch
 Chíppauk To split
 Cupperharne To shut
 Chewwar To touch
 Carmátchey To borrow

Deb´bikat Night
 Doskeennerway´mug Young man, or men
 Daggow´wemeech Pain
 Dar´jey Sand
 294Dar´niss, or indong´way Daughter
 Dadge Rotten
 Dáckquoy Short
 Doutch Down, on the ground
 Deb´woy True, to be true
 Dus´quin To close
 Debar´chim, or debar´chemon To converse
 Daguoit´so To read
 Depen´dan, or gúddypendan To own
 Dar´missey To give

[259]

Euníck Fathom (a measure)

Ergush´shemin	Aunt
E´quoy	Woman, or female
E´quoysince	Girl
Eshtergóan	Head
Espeoc´kay	Mountain
Essíngo	Rocks
Eshteroath´can	Skull
E´shcan	Spears
Esh´pea	Sky
Es´zar, or gúddeszar	To go; I will go
Ethetum war´march	To begin
Es´termeech	To lift
Esh´permeech	To learn
Etummecar´tey	To revolt
Ecar´to	To be told

Gósenan	King, or great chief
Gwat´so	Eyebrow
295Gatsoates	Edge
Gwoyack	Justice, or truth
Geezus	Moon
Guéveshew	Plover
Going	Snow
Geessesesey	Sun, or great light
Gwimbítch	Wing, of birds
Geessennar	Cold

[260]

Geeshar´tay Hot, or warm; to make hot or warm

Guy´oxim Ready

Guachootch Rough

Gar Permission

Guyyea Also, too

Gwotch, or népewar Much, or a great deal

Gudggymárdat To barter

Guabeecheway, or tercúshenan To return

Gowweájetoan To build

Gamar´char To depart

Guy´yossey To want

Géosay To hunt

Ganneuain´nemar To keep

Gun´nesar To kill

Guddypar´han To pay

Guddypen´dan, or dépendan To own

Gudjey To tell

Gonish´kar To rise, or get up

Gúsketoan, or tójeytoan To work

Gúddesar, or Es´zar To go, I will go

296

Huncush´igon, or annacotch´igon Merchandise

Hagua´missey, or táguámissey Courage

Háwoyzask Musquash, or musk rat

Haw´wercoon Tripe de rôche, or rock weed

Hamátchey Broad

[261]

Haundwátchey Bottom

Hagúshenonce Small

Hawwaneeyaw, tarnin, tarneyau, or way´gonin What, or what now?

Han, or apackcan Any

Hapadjey Indeed

Hapitch, or pameech To open

Ha weebittan, or weebittan Make haste

Indong´way, or dar´niss Daughter

Jánis Son

Jónia Yellow

Ish´pemeg High, or above

Ingwítch, or awáss Last

Ish´pemeech Proud

I´shmick Sudden

Jimmenin Tame

Is´quamach Belly

Icktum guichum Between

I´shcarmooch Upon

In´denind, or indenén´dum To think

Indenen´dumsee To expect

Jímmim To attack

Jingwím To hold

297Ishpin To raise

Jaquíth To smell

Indenen ´dum gwoyack To believe a thing true

[262]

Ickkeetoyan To say; what did you say? when spoken angrily

Kes ´coneek Broken arm

Keemótegun Adultery

Kitchee anwin Ball, or large shot

Kitchee carboCrane (a bird)

Keenar ´bo Cloud, or grand cover

Kitchee assubbub Cable, or big rope

Keegónce Fish

Keeparteseesee Fool; he is a fool

Kitchee mannitoo God, or Great Spirit

Kitchee jónia Gold, or fine yellow metal

Kitchee squittyung Hell, or place of bad spirits

Keejayp Morning

Keenonjey Pike, a fish

Kitchee mannitoo ninnee Priest, or Master of Life ´s man

Kimmeewan Rain

Keenaypick ´neeshey Snakes

Kitchee meework Swan

Kitchee mókoman Sword, or great knife

Kitchee gammink Sea, or great unbounded lake

Keenárbittay Smoke, or fire fog

Kitchee náberquoin parbock ´erwoyan Sail of a ship

Kitchee náberquoin Ship, or great canoe
 Keemôtay Thief; he is a thief
 298Kispetaw´gan Tobacco pouch
 Keezay´cus Fear; to fear; he is afraid
 Ken´dersay Witness; you are a witness
 Kitchee, or nishshishshin Great, or good
 Kitchee way´besun Armbands
 Kittim Idle, or lazy
 Keenónge Long
 Keewáency Old, he is old
 Kitchee mor´gussey Poor
 Kakeejetty Raw, or unripe
 Keejetty Ripe, or dressed
 Kíttermish Slow
 Keen, kee, or kee kee Thou, or you
 Ka, or ca´wween No, not; nothing
 Késhpin If
 Kaygoshish Thing, or things
 Kaygait, kay, or meegwoyack It is true, or truly
 Kamar´chey Not yet
 Keennerwind Ye, your
 Kaygo I have
 Kakaygo I have not
 Keenandóton To beg; you beg
 Keeas´quin To catch
 Keekeepejar´can To arrive by land

Kískejune To cut

Keemar´jemet To carry

Keetar´peech To elect

[264]

Kitchee ungwoitch, undar´jewort To interpret

Keemótyan To steal

299Keemeechawich To stink; you stink, or your sentiments are offensive

Keebar´cham To strike

Keecannawen´dan To know; you know

Lissy Human hair

Mejásk, or nepísh Herb, or grass

Marchián Journey; to go a journey

Mushqueewor´meteek Knot of wood

Mannetónce Ants, and all small insects

Misquy´ Blood

Mannetoo menan´ce Beads

Mackquáh Bear

Mackquacon´ce, or mackon´ce Cub bear

Meetecónse Branches of a tree

Marseynay´gan Book, letter, or paper

Meteeke múshcomat, or muccuck Box of wood, or bark, or rum keg

Môtay Bottle

Múshcomat Bag

Meecoose Canoe awls

Medar´min Indian corn

Menómon Indian rice

Matchee Mannitoo Devil, or bad spirit

Misquoitch Dew

[265]

Mackcóan Dish

Meekintar´gan Pack, or bundle of skins

Marsennahatch, or marsennay´gan Debt, or trust

300Meeno geesshegat Fine day

Matchee geeshegat Bad day

Moouse Elk

Meegeezes Eagle

Matchee oahthy Enemy, or bad heart

Mattoyash Earth

Meechaw Face

Meedséywort Fundament

Muckkikee Frog

Mejimmim Food

Mishquoishártay Fever

Marchew´ Gall

Min´nishish Grapes

March Hole

Min´nesey Island

Min´nesin Peninsula

Meequorm Ice

Mókoman Knife, or knives

Meemoche Lips

Mittasse Leggons, or stockings

MaunkLoon, (a bird)

Maskikkee Medicine

Mentimoy´ey Wife, or mistress

Mentimoy´amish My wife, or mistress

[266]

Meesey Mouth

Mergummegat News

Mackcutty, or mackcutty pingo Gunpowder, or black dust

Meecho Peace

Matchee pattso Poison, or the taste of the bad swelling

301Meekan Road

Mannetoo woygan´ Blue stroud

Mishwoygan´ Red stroud

Menókemeg Summer, or spring

Mat´wort Stumps of trees

Múshkowar Strength, or strong

Matchee geesshegar Storm

Monyny´yankMontreal, a town in Canada

Maukissin Indian shoes

Meteeek Trees, or wood

Mitchea Thumbs

Meessay Urine

Mawhin´gon Wolf

Mecar´tay War; to go to war; to fight, or quarrel

Menópemeg Woods

Misquoyshoanar´boop Wine, or blood red broth

Matchee móyamee Whore, or bad woman

Matchee Bad, or wicked

Matooch Bitter

Matchee way´begun Barren, or not bearing fruit

[267]

Menditoo Big, or great

Matchee arpeech Coarse, not fine

Matchee weebeeze say Cunning

Meenwen´desay Easy

Mee Enough

Meermárjis Few

Meecheweass Fresh, not stale

Mooshquenay Full

Mackcutty Black

Meeshar´quoit Light, or bright

302Marnay Many

Mooshkey Pregnant

Misquy, or misquitty Red

Matcheewa Savage, or wild

Marmo Together

Maunder, or mor This, or that

Metách, or menoch Besides

Mewinch Because

Meenewatch Again, or yet

Memar´mo, or cargoneek Always, wherever

Maywisher Long time ago, formerly, or is it long since?

Moszack But

Meegwoyack, kay, or kaygait It is true, or right, or very well

Meewgotch Thank you

Mishcoot To alter, or change

Marchetoon To send

[268]

Mantetappy To sit down, or sit you down

Meetso To push

Mirrorerrindan To please

Metashwar´bermy To account

Mornooch nezar´gay To approve; I approve

Mawwinnewah To assist

Marchím To bend

Matchee arpeech chickwar To betray

Matchee arpeech chickwar´woke To betray a number of people

Marmy´ To weep

Mornooch towwárch To be unconcerned, or indifferent about a thing

303Mushkáwesay To defend

Mat´woit To hit

Min´niquah To drink

Mishcow´womeech To lend

Marchtooch To dip

Mushcow´wartin To freeze

Matootoo To perspire

Nondar´gay Arch, part of a circle

Nowettywich, or nowwetting Breath

Narmay´bin Carp, a fish

Nepewarnoondájewot Crowd

Non´dawar Ear

Neejee, or neecarnis Friend, or companion

Nepewoajánis Family

Nócey Father

[269]

Nepísh, or mejásk Herb, or grass

Nabaim´ Husband, or master of weakness

Nishinnorbay Indians

Noochimmoín Life

Nin´gay Mother

Ninneé Man

Narb Nails of fingers and toes

Neecárk Wild goose

Nepeech Leaves

Nekeek Otter

Neatissum, or weebor´so Veins of the body

Nondájewot People, or nation

Nepewámeteek Raft of wood

Nink Skin of animals

304Nepan´ Sleep

Narmay´guiss Trout

Narpoon	Village
Nippee	Water
Noetting	Wind
Newemo	Ashamed; to be ashamed
Ningootch	Another
Nezar´gea	Fond, I am fond
Nepewár, or gwotch	Much, or a great deal
Nishshishshin´, or kitchee	Good, or great
Nobeetch, or pockcan	New, or strange
NarnínSmooth	
Nebítch	Sour

[270]

Nepeeweenoon	Wet
Nowwenday´shon	Weary, or tired
Neepoo	Dead
Nepárhar	Drowsy; I am drowsy
Nin, nee, or nee nee	I, me, my
Nin aighter	I myself, or alone
Neennerwind	We, us, or our; all of us
Nangay´mer, or angay´mer	Yes
Nogom	Now, or lately
Ningoot	Afterwards, or after
Ningoochum	Behind
Ningootch	Another
Nar	Is it, was it, can it
Nishcar´teyan	To affront

Neeshar´quish	To hate
Nishcarteseyan	To be vexed; I am vexed
Nishcartissay, or annascartissey	To vex
305Nóneydone	To answer, or attend to
Nindooton, or nindootimond	To ask; I ask
Negádeja	To ascend
Nepewoy´awat	To bathe
Neesstootewar	To understand
Ninnowatchim	To conquer
Neméh	To dance
Nepewooch	To drown
Nartín, or petoon	To fetch, or bring
Naw´wameetch	To hurt
[271]	
Neewo	To join
Neparhan	To lie down
Newinnemecoossay	To forget; I forget
Newárbemoach	To foretell; I foretell
Nondágaitch, or stootewar	To hear
Neewatch	To meet
Neech, or acktone	To put, or place
Nebebeewoy	To promise
Nájemoon	To sing
Nondágat	To sink
Neminwain´desee	To satisfy
Nepa´n	To sleep

Nandootum To call

Onágun Bark bowl, or cup

Oakónus, or amik woygan ´ Beaver robe

Opeewyesky Beard

Onick ´ quick Back

Oakcan Bones

Opin Brain

306Oncean Breech clout

Oskenay ´ gay Boy

Owentágun Barrel

Ojémaw, or O ´ kemaw Chief

Ogunnegat Day, or days

Ozett Foot, or feet

Oyan Fur of animals

[272]

Ochick ´ Fisher, an animal

Onuggesh Bowels

Oathty Heart

Opeeway Hair of animals

Oweoathcoan Hats

Onúggemeg Portage, or carrying place

Ogashy Horse

Ocárt Leg

Onjee Land

Onjeech Mud

Opoy´gan	Pipe
Ogánce	Pickerill, a fish
Onnemay	Sturgeon, a fish
Opickquoy	Squirrel
Oquarme	Thighs
Outon Tongue	
Ozonnemon	Vermillion
Ozóme	Too much, or dear
Ozóme pongay	Too little
Onar´gushey	Dark
Omích Round	
Opar´mey	Below
Omár, or owáy	Here
Otárpeet	Under
307Ojey	To
Ondass	Come here
Osquibby, or squibby	Drunk
[273]	
Ojit	To grind
Ojeytoon, or ogúbbetoon	To make, or do
Ondashin´	To come on
Pennyshance All small birds	
Pamótay way´begun	Ashes
Peckqueen dorsow	Breech
Pewarbickcónce	Brass wire

Paunéa	Broaches
Peshshekey	Buffalo
Pesh´shemo	Bed
Penar´quan	Combs
Piskawágan	Coats
Peshshew	Wood cat
Pewar´bick	Copper, iron, or brass
Pingo	Dust, or powder
Pewyar	Eyelid
Pennyshis	Fowl, or birds
Pockquoísigan	Flour, or bread
Pinneesh	Fruit
Pequim	Feathers of birds
Pewarmickcoon	Flint stone
Powwabickcoon	Gun flints
Pickkew	Gum
Powwetink	Rapid or strong current of water
Péwithay	Stranger
Pewarbeneech	Hawk bells
308Peja´rcan	Harbour
Pemartus	Health
Pendycutty	Horn
Puttwar	Knee
Pecktópe	Nostrills
Pinneck	Navel
Pimmethy	Oil, fat, or grease; or to be fat

Peenay	Partridge	
Pockkikkin	Skin (human)	
Parbock´erwoyan´	Shirts	
Pockcan worrockay, or pockcan tunnockay		The other world, or country
Pitchynar´go	Yesterday	
Pester´quan	Heavy	
Parmín	Bald	
Pejar´moach	Jealous	
Pongay, or hagush´enonce	Little, small	
Páyshik	One, the, a, or an	
Pockcan, or nobeetch		Strange, or new
Packquoim	Wide	
Payshéw	Near, or nigh	
Papay´jit	Each	
Panímár	By and by	
Pendeek	In	
Pay, páyshik	Here, and there	
Pack´itan	To abandon, or forsake	
Peach, or tarpín	To feel	
[275]		
Pon´kissin	To fall	
Pamískian, or pemískar		To go by water
Papamôtay	To go by land	
309Peechúganub	To hang	
Packettywaun	To beat	
Pawpy´	To laugh	

Packquoy mowachin To mend
Packquoítso To mix
Petoon, or nartín To fetch, or bring
Pameech, or hapítch To open
Pisquitch To pass
Pemíshkar To row
Papyan To rejoice
Pejar´kemet To release
Pas´serquoin To stand up
Pemíshcarmooch To sail
Pis quemeetch To shake
Pamósay To walk
Pooterway chebock´woy To make a fire and cook

Quickwahay Beaver eater
Queebesince Child, or children
Quinch Liver
Quéwescence Virgin
Quoyjím To bite
Quois´ciquen To weigh

[276]

Shaquoit Air
Shemayn Brother
Shoanar´boop Broth, or soup
Shemay´nce Sister
Shamíshcart Battle

Sedgwin	Current of water	
Squendum	Door; shut the door	
Sheshíb	Wild duck	
310Saggonash	English	
Squittykan	Fire steels	
Squitty, or scotay	Fire	
Scotay wigwass	Fire bark	
Saggoban ´wan	Hair plates	
Shóamin	Huckleberries	
Seegwa	Lungs	
Squitty annacook	Lightning, or quick fire	
Sakíegan	Lake	
Shenowantágan	Lines for a net	
Shan ´gwoitch	Mink	
Shem ´mor	Neck	
Shaboonegun	Needles	
Shenecázeau	Name	
Sen ´nebar	Ribbands, or silk	
Scótaywa ´bo, or squittywa ´bo	Rum, or brandy	
Seepee	River	
Sheesheebanwín	Shot	
Sheecark	Skunk, or pole cat	
[277]		
Seezeebockquoit, or seezequar	Sugar, or sweet	
Sagoyb	Well of water	
Sheotágan	Salt	

Shemágonish Soldier, warrior, or brave man

Squissow Throat

Sawwétch Tongue of animals

Sazárgesay Greedy, or covetous

Sannegat Hard, cruel; it is hard, or cruel

311Sasay´ga Handsome

Shenargussey Such

Sug´germarsh Quiet; all is quiet

Shyyár, or shar´shyyár Past, or gone, or done

Squibby, or Osquibby Drunk

Sparchtay Thirsty, or dry

Sharshyar´newebens To arrive by water

Squittyar´bach To burn

Sug´gersoy To smoke a pipe

Squabeech To swim

Serpar´gussey To shew

Stootewar, or nondágaitch To hear

Squamích To run

Sharshyyár Long since

Taguámissey, or haguámissey Courage

Tonbin´gesay Noise

Tunnoc´kay Country

Teakíagun Gun worms

[278]

Tarbátch Hips

Tootooshonarbo	Milk, or sap of the breast
Tam ´mikquoin	Spoon
Tarbinnáck	Indian slay
Tarbishár	Thunder
Talon ´jay	Blue
Tarwar ´chewort	Toes
Thurensera	Dawn of day
Tarpoach	Voice, or the echo of the breath
Tabiscoach	Equal, or alike
312Towwacktowar	Surprising
Tannepy	When, or whence
Tar ´nin, tar ´neyau, way ´go nin, or hawwaneeyaw	What, or what now?
Tawnimilik, or andersoy	How many, what price, how much?
Taw! waw!	Oh! oh!
Tarpenán	To take
Takooshin	To arrive at a place
Tackannin	To bind, or tie
Tuckunnin	To choose
Tibárimaw	To govern
Tuckunnum ´kewish	To marry
Tonbin ´gus	To bawl
Tercush ´enan, or guabeecheway	To return
Tarpin, or peach	To feel
Tójeytoon, or gúsketoon	To work
Utchwar	Chin

[279]

Un´gwoitch Busy

Unter, or aighter Only, at, or alone

Untowarch Unto

Way´bissay, or waybeezesay Thoughts

Warbunk To-morrow

Warwích Ankle

Warcockquoit, or warcockquoit opoygan Tomahawk

Wabatch An animal between a dog and a wolf

313Wheeyóe Breast

Waperwoyan´ Blankets

Wapátch Basket, or hand bowl

Warmeek Bridge

Wigwass Bark of a tree

Warbim´ Cheeks

Wiskin´ky Eyes

Wark Eggs

Warbegum´ Globe, the earth

Weass Flesh of animals

Wisseneet Feast

Waymístergoash French, or builders of vessels

Wakay´gon Fort, or tower

Wematishtergóan Bald head

Woygán, or oakónus Robe made of peltry

Wapoos Hare

[280]

Weeyan Hide of animals

Wigwaum House, cabin, or hut

Wakeck´uman Crooked knife

Warbermoon Looking glasses

Winnetoon Loss

Warbun´ Month

Woyzáskquish Rush mat

Warbeshan´ce Marten, an animal

Wesshepátchta Bird´ s nest

Woyzásk Rushes

Watappy Roots of trees

Warmeech Tail of animals

Weenecobbo Turkey

Weebitt Teeth

Weebor´so, or neatissum Veins

314Wiscon´kiskey Young, offspring

Warbermeneech Blind

Weematch Sharp

Warbishcár White

Waterwawadoossin Roots; a figurative expression for the affections of the heart, which
entwine about each other

Ween He, him, she or her

Weennewar Ye, they, or them

Way´nin Who, or who is that?

Way´gonin, hawwaneeyaw } What, or what now?

—— tar´nin }

—— Tar´neyau }

[281]

Waygush, or way way How, or how do you do?

Woity, or awoity There, at that place

Weebátch Immediately, or very soon

Weechópe Mine, belonging to me

Woke Plural number

Weebittan´, or ha, weebittan´ Make haste

Warbermeech To clean

Wíssemeg To chew

Wissinnin To eat

Weegewach´in To follow

Warbermecó To find

Wínnemawatch To neglect

Warmarch To spit

Wabindán To view, or examine well my mind

Wabemát, or wabemór To see

315Warcharch To seek

Warmatt To win

Warbennís, or warbennét To watch

Waybenán To throw away, to repudiate

Yoe Body

Yotch Nose

Yaquoy To avoid

Zenzeebisson Finger rings

Zárgay, or zargéytoon Love; to love

[282]

Zawnum ´ Paint; to paint

Zeepeeooch To boil

Zar ´ squoy To cure

Zeewitc ´ h To fly

Zayquébenan To wash

317

FAMILIAR PHRASES

IN THE

ENGLISH AND CHIPPEWAY LANGUAGES

318

[284] English

How do you do, friend?

In good health, I thank you.

What news?

I have none.

Have you had a good hunt this winter?

Yes, a very good hunt.

What lake did you hunt at last winter?

At the Skunk Lake.

What is there at that lake?

Beaver, but not much.

How long were you there?

Only one month.

They say there are no fish in that lake;

That is hard.

There has been a great deal of snow lately;

We have all found it hard this winter.

Did you see any strange Indians on the way?

Yes, I met five going to Lake Sturgeon.

Had they any thing with them?

No, I did not see any thing but slays.

I long to see spring, that we may go a fishing.

What lake will you fish at?

The Red Lake.

[286]

Our canoes are broken;

We must make new in the spring.

There is great quantity of birch bark at the Red Lake;

Yes, but the trees are small.

319

[285] Chippeway

Way, way, nee neejee?

Meegwotch nóbum pemártus.

Ta ´rnin mergúmmegat?

Caw ´ween a ´rwayyor.

Níshshishshín géosay nógone bebóme?

Anga ´ymer, O, níshshishshín.

Hawwaneeyaw sakíegan kee géosay awa ´ss bebóne?

Sheecark Sakíegan.

Way´gonin woíty ha sakíegan?

Amík, cawween gwotch.

Maywísher kee appay?

Páyshik geezus aíghter.

Eca´rto ca´wween ka´ygo keegónce woity sakíegan;

Sannegat.

Nepewár going nogóme;

Cockinnór marmó ojey candan sannegat nogóme bebóne.

Póckcan nishinnorbay kee warbema´t nar?

Anga´ymer, na´rnan nee warbemór onnemay sakíegan ojey eszar.

Ka´ygoshish arthty wéenewar nar?

Ca´wween, nin ojey warberma´t a´rwayyor tarbinna´ck.

Ba´dash menókemeg bóckettywaun neennerwind.

Ta´rneyau sakíegan keen bóckettywaun?

Misquíttyang sakíegan.

[287]

Cóckinnor neennerwind, O, chema´n ojey bowwískar;

Póckcan in gar ojeytoon menókemeg.

Nepewár wigwass woity Misquíttyang Sakíegan;

Anga´ymer, hagúshenonce metEEK.

320

English

How many fathom long will you make your canoe?

Perhaps three fathom.

There are many rapids at the Red Lake;

Are they hard rapids?

Here and there.

How long are you going up them?

Fifteen days.

That is long.

Bring me some tobacco;

Here is some for you.

This is English;

Yes, it is.

Sit down.

I want to smoke a pipe.

I am tired.

I will lie down.

I will get up.

I want to eat.

I want to drink.

We will make fire and cook our kettle;

It is ready;

Let us eat;

It is very good.

[288]

I will go.

Are you going, friend?

Yes, but I shall return soon.

Have you any good guns?

Yes.

Let us see them?

This is broke.

Here is another;

321

Chippeway

Ta ´wnimilík eu níck kee ojeytóon chema ´n?

Ca ´nnebatch neesswoy euník.

Nepewár powwetink Misquíttyang Sakíegan;

Sannegat nar powwetink?

Pay, pa ´yshik.

Maywísher nar shy ´yar cockinnór?

Metósswoy ogúnnegat asshea na ´rnan.

Débwoy maywísher.

Assa ´ymer petoon;

Oway.

Maúnder Sa ´ggonash;

Anga ´ymer dédwoy.

Manteta ´ppy.

Nee, wee, súggersoy.

Nowwenda ´yshon nin.

Nepa ´rhan, nin.

Goyey nin goníshcar.

Nee, nee, wissínnin.

Nee, nee, mínniquah.

Pooterway chebóckwoy neennerwind;

Shashy ´yar keejetty;

Haw wíssinnin;

Húnjeyta O, nishshishshin.

[289]

Nin gamárcha.

Shashy 'yar kee bóossin nar négee?

Angáymer, pánimar tercúshin nin.

O, nishshishshin baskéyzegan ártthy nar?

Angáymer.

Gar warbemór?

Maunder bowwískar.

Oway póckcan páyshik;

322

English

This, I think, is a good one.

I want a paddle;

Here is one for you.

Thank you, friend.

Where is your wife?

She is dead.

Is it long since?

Last winter.

Have you any children alive?

Only one boy.

Can he hunt?

Not yet.

Where is your brother?

I saw him last winter at the Skunk ´s Lake;

He was killed there by an Indian when he was drunk.

He was a bad Indian, and they should have killed him too;

An Indian just now told me he is killed.

That ´s right.

[290]

Was he old?

No.

He had three packs of beaver skins, and ten bags of dried meat, besides fish, when he was killed:

Oh! that was hard.

Who is that coming?

A strange Indian:

I will go and see him.

Are you come from far, friend?

No, a little way from hence.

323

Chippeway

Maúnder páyshik O, nishshishshin indenéndum.

Ab ´boy nee gúyyossay;

Oway páyshik.

Meegwotch, neecárnis.

Aúnday keen O, mentimóyey?

Sharshy ´yar nepoo.

Maywisher nar?

Pa ´yshik bebóne shy ´yar.

Ar´thty O, jánis nogóme pemártus?

Páyshik oskenáygay áighter:

Géosay ween nar?

Kamarchy.

Aúnday chemayn?

Nee warbemór awáss bebóne woity Sheecark Sakíegan;

Páyshik nishinnorbay ojey gúnnissar ween osquíbbby.

Ween O, mátchee nishinnórbay, meégwoyack O, gúnniesar ween gúyyea;

Shashy´yar ojey gúnnesar, ween nogóme me ecárto nishinnorbay;

Meegwoyack.

[291]

Keewáency nar?

Cáwween.

Ween arthty neésswoy meekintárgan appimíniquy metósswoy múshcomat wéass
spárchtay metách keegónce gúyyea:

Taw! waw! sannegat.

Hawwaneeyaw tercúshin?

Póckan Nishinno´rbay:

Nin eszar gar warbem´or

Awássa nar kee tercúshin, neegée?

Cáwween, páyshew omar.

324

English

What have you brought?

A small pack of beaver.

What will you want?

Blankets.

I have none but small for your children.

What is your trader 's name at the Red Lake?

The Good Heart.

Has he many goods there?

Five large canoes full.

Have you any bears ' grease?

One box only.

I will trade with you for it;

Very well, friend.

How many beaver skins did you give for that blanket?

Eleven.

I want to buy such;

[292]

You will get such at the English trader 's.

How many beaver skins will you take for this?

Twenty:

Take them, friend.

Will you trade for those otter skins?

No, not now; I must pay my credit to the Good Heart.

What did you take from him?

Some small things.

Fetch me some water.

Make haste.

Do you hear me?

Chippeway

Wa´ygonin kee ogúbbetoon?

Hagúshenonce meekinta´rgan appimíniquy.

Wa´ygonin kee gúyyossay?

Wa´perwoyan.

Ca´wwéen kaygo wa´rpewoyan hagúshenonce kee janis shena´rgussey.

Ta´rnin sheneca´zeau keennerwind arta´wwaywinnin Misquíttyang Sakíegan?

Níshshishshin oa´thty.

Nepewar huncúshigon a´rthty nar?

Na´rnan kíchee cheeman mo´oshquenay.

Mackqua´h pímmethy a´rthty nar?

Pa´yshik muccuck a´ighter.

Nee wee arta´wway;

Meégwoyack, négee.

An´dersoy appimíniquy kee, kee, arta´wway, wa´perwoyan?

Meto´sswoy asshea pa´yshik.

Nee wee arta´wway shenargussey;

[293]

Sa´ggonash a´rthty shena´rgussey.

An´dersoy appimíniquy keetarpa´n mor?

Neesh tanner:

Tarpa´n neeca´rnis.

Cúnner kee wee arta´wway maúnder nekeék woygan?

Cáwwéen, nogóme; nee wee gudderpa´rhan nee marseyna´ygan níshshishshin o´athty.

Wa´ygonin kee tarpena´n?

Póngay ka´ygoshish.

Nippee nartin.

Ha, webitta ´n.

Cunner kee sto ´otewar?

326

English

I hear you.

Come here;

I am coming.

What kind of a hunt had the Fox last winter?

The winter was bad indeed.

What did he hunt for?

Bear.

I wish this was spring, and all the Indians would come and trade their winter ´s hunt;

They will come soon:

I think they will have a great many packs.

What will you ask to take me by water from Montreal to Michillimakinac?

One large keg of rum, one gun, one blanket, one kettle, and one knife; that is all I want:

[294]

That is too much, as you will eat and drink the same as us, and will not work, but only shew the way.

Will you go directly?

No, I shall stay till to-morrow, and then embark.

I left my wife and children at a place four days march from hence.

I want to see them.

To-morrow, at the dawn of day, we will embark.

Take courage; farewell, friend.

Very well, I will be true to my word.

All is quiet.

I will go to bed.

Get up, friend.

I am lazy.

327

Chippeway

Kee, kee, no´neydone.

Onda´ss;

Nin tercúshin.

Ta´rnin shena´rgussey géosay Assinbo awa´ss bebo´ne?

Hapadgey maítchee bebo´ne.

Wa´ygonin ween géosay?

Mackqua´h.

Ba´dash meno´kemeg ha cockinno´r marmo níshinnorbay tercúshin ojey arta´wway
awass bebo´ne O, wo´ygan;

Weeba´tch tercushin weénnewar:

Nepewar meekinta´rgan indenéndum weénnewar.

Wa´ygonin kee nindootymond monyny´yank woíty Michillima´kinac pamis´kian?

Pa´yshik kitchee muckcúck scotaywa´bo, pa´yshik baskéyzegan, payshik wa´perwoyan,
pa´yshik akeek, pa´yshik mo´koman; me cockinno´r:

[295]

Ozo´me kee tabisco´ach wíssinnin neénnerwind mínniqy ca´wween a´rwayyor kee
gúsketoon meekan mee áigher unter wabindan´.

Weebatch gúddesar keen?

Ca´wween, omar ojey appay; warbunk boossin.

Mee woity ojey appay, mentimóyamish, ja´nis woke, guyyea neon ogúnnegat.

Nee, nee, warbema ´t weennewar.

Warbunk thurensara boossin.

Hagua ´rmissey, way, way, negee.

Meegwoyack, nee gar débwoy.

Súggermarch.

Péshshemo nin gama ´rchar.

Goníshcar, neegee.

Kittim nin.

328

English

I am sick.

I am vexed.

I am cold.

I am hot.

I am hungry.

I am dry.

I am well.

I love you.

Your health, friend.

I do not understand you.

329

Chippeway

Acquoise nin.

Nishcar´teseyan.

Geessénnar nin.

Geesha´rtay nin.

Bócketty nin.

Spa'rchtay nin.

Pema'rtissey nin.

Neeza'rgay keen.

Kee talleneman'co, or, keetan'nemecó neejee.

Cawween nee stoticee.

THE END

1. Masson, *Bourgeois de la Compagnie du Nord-Ouest* (Quebec, 1890), ii, pp. 139, 140.

2. Alexander Henry, *Travels and Adventures in Canada* (Bain's ed., Boston, 1901), p. 233.

3. For the wages of voyageurs, see Turner, "Fur Trade in Wisconsin," *Wisconsin Historical Society Proceedings*, 1889.

4. See *Wisconsin Historical Collections*, ix, pp. 290, 291.

5. The chronology of Long's later years in Canada is confusing. On page 175 of his book, he gives the date of 1786, and after describing ten months' occupations says on the next page, "the spring of 1786." That this should be 1787, is proved by the fact that when he applied to General Hope for assistance the next year, the latter had gone to England. As Hope's departure occurred in June, 1788, Long's mistake of a year in his dates is thus manifest.

6. The following are those to whom he definitely refers: Lahontan, Hennepin, La Salle, Colden, Adair, Carver, Jonathan Edwards, Kalm, Beatty, Rev. John Sargent, Robson, Umfreville, Kames, Robert Rogers, Pope's poems, a novel by Lady Emily Montague, and Justamond's *Life of Louis XV*.

7. Field, *Essay toward an Indian Bibliography* (New York, 1873).

8. Long's book is of slight topographic value to the historical student, because of the apparently uninhabitable nature of the countries through which he passed; they are nearly as undeveloped now as they were then.

9. For list of partners, see Canadian Archives, 1888, p. 61.

10. Sir Joseph Banks, president of the Royal Society from 1778 until his death in 1820, was the patron of discoverers, having himself voyaged around the world with Captain Cook (1768–71). He was especially interested in Northwest exploration, and the customs and habits of primitive people, and to him Alexander Henry dedicated his *Travels and Adventures in Canada*.—Ed.

11. The Treaty of Paris, drawn up between the envoys of the United States and those of Great Britain (1783), was called "Oswald's Treaty," because Richard Oswald was chief negotiator for the British ministry. The Northwest posts were not surrendered de facto, until after Jay's Treaty in 1794.—Ed.

12. Louis Armand de Lom d'Arce, Baron de Lahontan, was a French officer who served in Canada, in 1683–93. While commanding a small fort on Detroit River, he started on a journey to the Western country. Going by way of Mackinac, he ascended the Mississippi from the mouth of the Wisconsin, and explored part of Minnesota. In 1703 he published an account of his travels, which was largely fabulous, although of some value. The work had, however, great vogue in the eighteenth century, was translated into several languages, and much studied. He also published a French-Algonquian dictionary, to which Long here refers.—Ed.

13. Rev. Jonathan Edwards was much interested in Indian missions; and having been brought up among the Stockbridges, published (1788) *Observations on the Language of the Mukhekaneew Indians*. In a republication with notes by John Pickering, in the *Massachusetts Historical Collections*, 2nd series, x, pp. 81 ff., the added Chippewa vocabulary is that of Long.—Ed.

14. Jonathan Carver, one of the earliest American explorers of the Northwest, was born in 1732, and served in the French and Indian War, barely escaping from the massacre of Fort William Henry. In 1766, he went to Mackinac, and thence through Wisconsin and Minnesota, and later explored Lake Superior. His *Travels* were first published in London in 1778, and two years later he died there in destitute circumstances. For further details see Wisconsin Historical Collections, vi, pp. 220–237. Carver gives an account of Indian manners and customs; chapter 17, devoted to language, includes a Chippewa vocabulary.—Ed.

15. Long is here following the authority of Father Hennepin, who gives this origin of the name “Canada” in his *New Discovery* (London, 1698). The real origin of the word is disputed, some deriving it from an Iroquois term meaning “village;” others from Indian terms signifying “at the mouth of the river;” still others, from a term for “lakes,” i. e., a country full of lakes.—Ed.

16. The author assumes that Lake Huron is the source of the St. Lawrence, and that Lake Nipissing, which empties into Georgian Bay through the French River, is the source of Lake Huron.—Ed.

17. Trois Rivières, at the mouth of St. Maurice River, where it empties into the St. Lawrence by three channels separated by islands, was ceded (1634) to the Jesuits, who built a fort here. See Sulte, “La Rivière des Trois Rivières,” in *Royal Society of Canada Proceedings*, 1901, sec. i, pp. 97–116.—Ed.

18. A Jesuit mission entitled St. François Xavier was founded for Iroquois converts in 1669. Later it was removed to this village (near Montreal), which was named for an Indian town in the Mohawk Valley, also the seat of a Jesuit mission. The usual orthography is Caughnawaga.—Ed.

19. Long uses as his historical authority the work of Cadwallader Colden (whom he later cites directly), *History of the Five Indian Nations* (New York, 1727). Colden appears to have taken much of his material from Bacqueville de la Potherie’s *Histoire de l’Amérique*

Septentrionale (Paris, 1722). But Long does not blindly follow Colden, and adds other material.—Ed.

20. The Conoys and Nanticokes were fragments of Indian tribes which had removed from the South—driven forth by the pressure of English population—and with the consent of the Six Nations had settled on the upper waters of the Susquehanna.

In the third league the author probably intends to include the so-called “Ohio Indians”—the Miamis (Wanamis), Delawares, Mohicans, Munseys (a sub-tribe of the Delawares), the Wapingers (unidentified), and the Mingoes—who were all subordinate to the Six Nations. The Creeks were a powerful confederacy in Alabama, of which Coweta was the principal war-town on the Chattahoochee River.—Ed.

21. The Tuscaroras joined the Five Nations between 1712 and 1715. See Wisconsin Historical Collections, xvi, p. 321, for a letter from the governor of New France, mentioning this fact.—Ed.

22. After the Revolutionary War, nearly thirty thousand Loyalists left the United States to settle in the Canadian provinces. Of these, about ten thousand went from the back settlements by way of Lake Ontario, and founded Upper Canada. General Haldimand was largely instrumental in this movement, and 1784 was the year of its culmination. The Mohawks, also, under the leadership of Brant, removed about the same time to the two reservations mentioned by Long. Descendants of this tribe still live in these two localities, although most of the land has been alienated.—Ed.

23. This is a good résumé of the history of Fort Frontenac, which was built in 1673, abandoned during the Iroquois War in 1689, but restored in 1695. La Salle was for several years proprietor of the fort, the revenues from which passed afterwards to the royal treasury. In 1758, Fort Frontenac was captured and destroyed by a British expedition, after which it fell into disuse, until the Loyalists re-garrisoned it about 1784.—Ed.

24. This was the site of Father Picquet's mission and fortified post, La Présentation. This Sulpitian missionary came to Canada in 1734, and after several years' service in the colonies founded this establishment in 1749, where the city of Ogdensburg, New York, now stands. He was successful in attracting the Iroquois thither, and had in his settlement nearly three thousand Indians, who espoused the French cause in the French and Indian War. In 1760, Picquet retired to New Orleans, and thence to France. The English, on taking possession, changed the name of the post to Fort Oswegatchie. It was garrisoned and maintained until after Jay's Treaty in 1794.

In 1792, the site had been purchased by Ogden, and the settlement of the modern city was begun four years later.—Ed.

25. The Mississagua Indians were first met by the French on the north shore of Lake Huron, and formed part of the Sault Ste. Marie mission (1670–73). Later, they removed to the lower Michigan peninsula, and some settled at Detroit. They now have a reservation in Eastern Ontario, and number about eight hundred.

The other Indians mentioned are those of the Jesuit mission villages. See *Jesuit Relations* (Thwaites's ed., Cleveland, 1896–1901), index.—Ed.

26. Haldimand fortified Carleton Island at the mouth of Lake Ontario, by sending thither (1778) three companies of the 47th regiment to erect a post.—Ed.

27. The mouth of the Oswego River was early noted as an important station in relation to the Iroquois country and the fur-trade. Champlain passed here in 1615, and Frontenac in 1692. In 1721, Governor Burnet of New York secured permission from the Iroquois to erect a trading post at this spot, and despite the protests of the French built a fort in 1726–27. This post of Choueguen (so called by the French) was especially obnoxious to the French fur-traders; all the more so, when (1743) Sir William Johnson built his trading post beneath its walls. Montcalm organized an expedition, and captured it in 1756; but was compelled to retreat when Forbes penetrated Pennsylvania. It was also the rendezvous for the successful British attack on Fort Frontenac in 1758. After the fall of New France, the British garrisoned and repaired the fort, and it was from here that St. Leger started on his

expedition up the Mohawk Valley in 1777. It was headquarters for the Indian and Tory scalping parties—Butler, Brant, and Johnson started thence on their raids. It was in British hands at the close of the Revolution, and not delivered to the Americans until 1796. Traces of the British fort were to be seen in 1839.—Ed.

28. Fort Niagara, one of the chain of posts established by the French, and later maintained by the British to protect Canada, has had a long and interesting history. Hennepin and La Salle were there in 1679, when a small blockhouse was constructed, which was later burned by the Senecas. Denonville erected a fort here in 1687, which was abandoned September 15, 1688. No permanent establishment was made on the spot until 1726, when Governor Beauharnais ordered a fort built to counteract that of the English at Oswego. This was garrisoned and maintained by the French, until Sir William Johnson captured it in 1759. At Niagara, in 1764, Johnson met the Indian nations in a general treaty of peace. During the Revolution, the post was steadily maintained by the British, and proved an important base of supplies for the Western forts. After the Revolution, it remained in British hands until 1796. In the War of 1812–15, it was captured by the British, and restored to the Americans at the close of the conflict. For further details see Severance, *Old Trails on the Niagara Frontier* (Buffalo, 1899).—Ed.

29. Fort Stanwix was built by the British at the head of navigation on the Mohawk River (where the city of Rome, New York, now stands), in 1758, at a cost of \$266,000. Here was held the treaty of 1768, by which a general purchase of Indian lands was made, and the Iroquois boundaries settled. Early in the Revolution it fell into American hands, and was re-christened Fort Schuyler, which withstood the siege of St. Leger and his Indian braves in 1777. It is claimed that the present national flag, as adopted by Congress in 1777, was first raised over the battlements of Fort Schuyler. After the Revolution, the fort was rebuilt, and reverted to its original name. Here were held important treaties with the Iroquois in 1784 and 1788, in the latter of which much land in the Mohawk Valley was ceded to the whites. The settlement about the fort was made in 1785, by Connecticut emigrants.—Ed.

30. For history of Detroit see vol. i of the present series, p. 55, note 18.—Ed.

31. For the history of Mackinac, see “Story of Mackinac,” in Thwaites’s *How George Rogers Clark won the Northwest, and Other Essays in Western History* (Chicago, 1903). By the

“isthmus” the author means the Upper Peninsula of Michigan; the “point of land” must signify the island of Mackinac. The “mouth of the Illinois” is the outlet of Lake Michigan.—Ed.

32. Grand Portage was the route by the Pigeon River (the present boundary between Minnesota and Ontario) to the lakes and streams of the Northwest. The term was first applied to the carrying place, nine miles long, and later to a landing place somewhat south of the mouth of the river. This route was first explored by La Vérendrye in 1731—(see Wisconsin Historical Collections, xvii, for a map of this region drawn by an Indian for La Vérendrye). It became the established fur-trade route to the Northwest, and a place of great importance as a rendezvous for voyageurs. For a description of the route and the traders gathered here in the latter part of the eighteenth century, see Mackenzie, *Voyages through North America* (London, 1801).—Ed.

33. For the British determination to retain the Northern and Western posts, and arguments in regard to their legal right, see “Calendar of Haldimand Papers,” Canadian Archives, 1885–89, also McLaughlin, “Western Posts and the British Debts,” in American Historical Association Report, 1894.—Ed.

34. This action took place September 24, 1775, and was the occasion of the capture and imprisonment of Ethan Allen. For his own narrative of this event, see Hall, *Ethan Allen* (New York, 1892), pp. 110–119.—Ed.

35. General Richard Montgomery, the commander of the American forces at Isle aux Noix—an island in Richelieu River about ten miles from the head of Lake Champlain—wrote September 12, 1775, concerning the skirmish here mentioned: “I went down the river the other day with 800 or 900 men, in order to cut off the communication between St. Johns and Montreal. The detachment marched off from the boats at night, and in less than half an hour, returned in the utmost confusion.”—Biographical notes concerning General Richard Montgomery (Poughkeepsie, 1876), p. 11.

Lieutenant Walter Butler was a New York Tory, son of Colonel John Butler, who led the Indians to the Wyoming Valley massacre. Walter Butler was with St. Leger in 1777, and was

captured soon after the siege of Fort Schuyler. Escaping from prison at Albany, he led the Iroquois to the Cherry Valley massacre (1778). He seems to have been despised for his cruelty, even by his own associates. Brant said he was “more savage than the savages themselves.” He was killed and scalped at Butler’s Ford, in the retreat from Johnstown in 1781, by an Oneida, who called out as he fell, “Cherry Valley!”—Ed.

36. Long was a member of the party of forty regulars detached from the 8th regiment under command of Captain Foster, with a large body of Indian auxiliaries led by Brant, which descended upon the American detachment at the Cedars, forty-three miles above Montreal, and captured the whole number (April 19, 1776). For further details of this, and the following movements, see Jones, *Campaign for the Conquest of Canada* (Philadelphia, 1882), pp. 54–65.

Major Gordon, who had recently been made brigadier-general, was shot from ambush, July 24, 1776, while returning to his headquarters well within British lines. His fellow officers were exceedingly indignant over it, and Washington appeared to deprecate the matter; although General Gates promoted the American officer involved. See Sparks, *Life and Writings of Washington* (Boston, 1855), iv, pp. 56–59.—Ed.

37. This was probably Captain Guillaume Lamothe, who during this period led so many Indian scalping parties from Detroit while Hamilton commanded at that place. Lamothe accompanied Hamilton on the latter’s expedition to Vincennes, and was captured there by George Rogers Clark (February, 1779). After the surprise of Vincennes he was sent in irons to Virginia, and kept in close confinement. In April, 1780, he accepted a parole, and returned to Canada.—Ed.

38. The Lake of Two Mountains is an enlargement of the Ottawa River, near its mouth, above Montreal. On this lake is situated the Sulpitian mission town of Oka. This is a union of two early missions—one, founded about 1677 on Montreal Island for Iroquois converts, weakened during the Iroquois War, and removed in 1704 to the Sault au Récollet, being finally located on the Lake of Two Mountains about 1720; the second, or Algonkin mission, was first called La Présentation and situated on Montreal Island near Lachine; the site was abandoned in 1685, and the remnants of the mission Indians gathered at Bout de l’Isle (the other end of the same island), where the mission was called St. Louis. Again removed

(1706–07) to the Isle aux Tourtres, it was permanently located on the Lake of Two Mountains between 1721 and 1726. There are still about four hundred Indians located on the reserve at the lake. See Canadian Department of Indian Affairs Report, 1901, p. 49. The account given by Long in the following pages, of the Chippewa division of this mission, is the best known—their intermarriage with the Indians of the other mission villages at Caughnawaga and St. Regis, their cultivation of the soil, and their semi-civilized habits.—Ed.

39. Peter Kalm, Swedish naturalist and botanist, was sent to America to study its flora, and travelled extensively between 1748 and 1751. The English edition of his travels was published in London in 1772.—Ed.

40. James Adair, a trader among the Cherokee and Chickasaw Indians, 1735–75. He published a *History of the American Indians* (London, 1775), which attempts to prove their relationship to the Jews. It contains, notwithstanding, much valuable information, particularly in regard to the Southern tribes.—Ed.

41. This was Rev. John Sargent, missionary to the Stockbridge Indians, in Western Massachusetts.—Ed.

42. On the subject of Indian dances see *Jesuit Relations*, index. Also Grant, in Masson, *Bourgeois de la Compagnie du Nord-Ouest*, ii, pp. 335–337.—Ed.

43. This origin of the name La Chine is generally accepted by historians. See Girouard, *Lake St. Louis and La Salle* (Montreal, 1893), pp. 32, 33.—Ed.

44. The “bourgeois” was the chief trader, to whom the voyageurs were bound by engagements for service. The term was also often applied to the trader’s agent or clerk, when the latter was in command of the expedition. See Turner, “Fur Trade in Wisconsin,” *Wisconsin Historical Society Proceedings*, 1889, pp. 77–82.—Ed.

45. For a description of the trade route by way of Ottawa River, Lake Nipissing, Georgian Bay, and Lake Huron to Mackinac, see H. H. Bancroft, *History of the Northwest Coast* (San Francisco, 1886), i, pp. 561–564. Also, for a personal narrative, see that of Captain Thomas G. Anderson, in *Wisconsin Historical Collections*, ix, pp. 138–143.—Ed.

46. On the habits and uses of the beaver (*castor Canadensis*), see Martin, *Castorologia* (Montreal and London, 1892).—Ed.

47. The normal food of those who wintered in the woods was Indian corn and tallow. See Turner, “Fur Trade in Wisconsin,” pp. 78, 79.

The Falls of St. Mary, or Sault Ste. Marie, were visited by traders as early as 1616. The Jesuit Relation of 1640 gives a partial description of this place. Radisson and Groseilliers were here between 1658 and 1660; and here (1669) a Jesuit mission was established by Allouez and Dablon. After 1689, the mission and trading post were abandoned in favor of Mackinac; but Sault Ste. Marie continued to be a station on the Northwestern fur-trade route; and in 1750 the land thereabout was granted to De Repentigny on condition that he erect a fort at that place. After the English occupation, a French Canadian, J. B. Cadot, had a trading post here, which was probably the one mentioned by Long. Later, the North West Company occupied the spot; but in 1814 its post was burned by a detachment of American troops, commanded by Major Holmes, who afterwards fell at the unsuccessful attack on Mackinac. The first military post and Indian agency of the United States at Sault Ste. Marie was established in 1822.

The Saulteurs were a Chippewa tribe, so called by the French from having been first encountered at the Sault. The name afterwards was employed to designate all the Chippewa nation. A pretty Indian legend of the origin of these falls, is found in *Jesuit Relations*, liv, p. 201.—Ed.

48. On the offering of tobacco to “Manitous,” see *Jesuits Relation*, x, p. 324. See, also, caption “Manitou,” in index thereto.—Ed.

49. Probably the “Athabasca,” one of the first schooners of the North West Company on Lake Superior. See Masson, *Bourgeois*, ii, p. 149. The French had a sailing vessel on Lake Superior as early as 1735. See *Wisconsin Historical Collections*, xvii.—Ed.

50. Pays Plat was the fur-trade station near the Nipigon River, about one hundred miles east of Grand Portage. It was situated on one of the islands of Nipigon Bay, and so named because of the low land and shoal water in the vicinity. See Bigsby, *Shoe and Canoe* (London, 1850), p. 223.—Ed.

51. For a history of the Chippewa Indians, see *Minnesota Historical Collections*, v.

This noted chief, Matchekewis, was the captor of Mackinac during Pontiac’s War. For a sketch of him, see *Wisconsin Historical Collections*, vii, pp. 188–194.—Ed.

52. For a description of Indian pipes and smoking habits, see U. S. National Museum Report, 1897, pp. 351 ff. The material for the red calumets is called “catlinite,” from George Catlin, who described it in 1836. It is found in the pipestone quarries of Pipestone County, in Southwestern Minnesota. See *Jesuit Relations*, lix, p. 310.—Ed.

53. For a description of the rattle called “sysyquoy,” see *Wisconsin Historical Collections*, xvi, p. 367; and Masson, *Bourgeois*, ii, p. 333.—Ed.

54. The Nipigon River is the largest and most northerly tributary of Lake Superior, and the outlet for Lake Nipigon. Its region, until the building of the Canadian Pacific Railroad, was almost as wild and unknown as when visited by the French explorers in the seventeenth century. Perrot mentions this river and lake in his *Mémoire* (1658); and Duluth (1684) wrote to De la Barre of the “fort which I have constructed near the River à la Maune, at the bottom [the north end of Lake Alemipigon,” as a barrier to the English trade from Hudson Bay. In 1687, Duluth’s brother traded with fifteen hundred Indians in the Lake Nipigon region. The furs from this district were especially rich and valuable, and the trading post on the lake appears to have been maintained throughout the French occupation. La Vérendrye was commandant here in 1728, when he became fired by the reports of the savage Ochagach,

with zeal for Western exploration. See *Northern and Western Boundaries of Ontario* (Toronto, 1878), pp. 68–80.

In 1757, Bougainville describes this post as follows: “Les Népignons, a post established to the north of Lake Superior; the commandant is its farmer and pays for that privilege about 4,000 francs; it includes the Lake à la Carpe.... The post produces generally every year from eighty to one hundred bundles of fur.” After the British occupation the productivity of the region declined. Duncan Cameron says that when he first went to this country (1785), the whole district produced but fifty-six packs of fur, although it had no opposition from Hudson Bay, and part of the Lake Winnipeg department was included in the Nipigon district. See Cameron, “The Nipigon Country,” in Masson, *Bourgeois*, ii, pp. 231–300. The North West Company considered this to be its territory, but later the Hudson’s Bay Company built a post at Red Rock, near the mouth of the river—now a station on the Canadian Pacific Railway. The Hudson’s Bay Company still maintains a wintering post, known as Poplar Lodge, on the east shore of Lake Nipigon. See Canadian Bureau of Mines Report, 1901, p. 212. The Nipigon River is now noted as a fisherman’s paradise. For a description of the route from the mouth of the river to the lake, see Canadian Geological Survey Report, 1867–69, p. 336.—Ed.

55. This is the game of lacrosse, a modification of which has become the Canadian national game. For an historical account of this game, see *Jesuit Relations*, x, pp. 326–328; Henry’s *Travels* (Bain’s ed.), p. 77; Masson, *Bourgeois*, ii, pp. 337, 338.—Ed.

56. For a similar game with slight modifications, see Masson, *Bourgeois*, ii, p. 340.—Ed.

57. Mr. Shaw was an independent trader, father of Angus Shaw, partner and agent of the North West Company.—Ed.

58. This is a citation from the *New Discovery of Hennepin*, who gives the first account of the tribe, apparently a branch of the Sioux, whose custom of weeping he so fully describes in connection with his captivity among the Issati Indians.—Ed.

59. The early cradles of the Chippewa Indians are described in more detail by Grant, "The Sautaux Indians," in Masson, *Bourgeois*, ii, pp. 322, 323.—Ed.

60. This is true not only of the St. Croix River (Wisconsin) Chippewas, but of nearly all the tribe up to the present time. The "woods Indian" north of Lake Superior is usually a Chippewa (Ojibwa), and a large portion of those under the care of the Canadian government are still hunters. The Canadian Department of Indian Affairs, in its Report for 1900, represents the modern Ojibwa as little changed, except from general inability to obtain liquor as freely as in the olden days of the fur-trade.—Ed.

61. For the hereditary enmity between the Chippewas and the Sioux, and the particularly fierce encounters of this period, see Warren, "History of the Ojibways," in *Minnesota Historical Collections*, v, pp. 72, 95, 222–241.—Ed.

62. Indian slavery among the French was first practiced in the Illinois country, and (1709) was authorized by edict for Canada. Slavery was abolished for Upper Canada in 1793; and by 1800 had ceased in Lower Canada. See Lafontaine, "L'ésclavage en Canada," *Montreal Historical Society Proceedings*, 1858; *Canadian Institute Transactions*, 1889–90 (Toronto, 1891); and *Proceedings*, 1897, p. 19.—Ed.

63. In the language of James Bain, Jr., librarian of the Toronto Public Library, "Long is the most indefinite of travellers, and English names of lakes and rivers unstable." It seems an almost hopeless task to localize several of his geographical names by the aid of modern maps. As a matter of fact this part of Northwestern Ontario from Lake Nipigon to Lake Abitibi is still almost terra incognita. For the best current maps and descriptions, see *Canadian Department of the Interior Report*, 1890, part v; also *Ontario Bureau of Mines Report*, 1900.—Ed.

64. Lake Savanne lies northwest of Lake Nipigon, on a tributary of the Albany River. A brief account of a voyage thither is given by Duncan Cameron, in Masson, *Bourgeois*, ii, p. 271. Cameron also says that four out of eight traders starved there in one year (*ibid.*, p. 242).—Ed.

65. Long was the first to apply the word “totamism” to that system of beliefs and family relationships, now recognized as the basis of primitive society. The theory of clan relationships, as expressed by totems, was first developed by M'Lennan in a series of articles published in the *Fortnightly Review*, 1869–71. On the general theory, see Lang, *Myth, Ritual, and Religion* (London, 1887), i, pp. 58–81. On the totemism of the American Indian there is a large literature. The following are useful: Schoolcraft, *Indian Tribes of the United States* (Philadelphia, 1851–57); Brinton, *Myths of New World* (Philadelphia, 3d ed., 1896).—Ed.

66. This was the grant made to Sir William Johnson in 1760, of sixty-six thousand acres, now within Little Falls Township on the Mohawk River. The grant was confirmed by the crown in 1769, and Johnson Hall, a large portion of which is still standing, was built thereupon. See vol. i of this series, p. 88, note 48.—Ed.

67. Henry says, “In North America there is no partridge; but the name is given to more than one species of grouse.” This was probably the *Canace* or *Dendragapus Canadensis*, black or spotted grouse.—Ed.

68. The loup-cervier is the Canadian lynx; the beaver eater, the wolverine (*gulo luscus*), or “carcajou.” For a description of the latter, see Martin, *Castorologia*, pp. 147–151.—Ed.

69. The grizzly bear (*ursus ferox*), was first adequately identified and described by Lewis and Clark. See Thwaites's ed. of *Original Journals of Lewis and Clark* (New York, Dodd, Mead & Co., 1904).—Ed.

70. Dobbs, *Account of the Countries adjoining Hudson's Bay* (London, 1744), gives a map of these regions “as described by Joseph La France, a French Canadese Indian, who Traveled thro those Countries and Lakes for 3 years from 1739 to 1742,” on which he places “Ouassi Indians” between the Michipicoten and Nipigon rivers on the north shore of Lake Superior. He also says (p. 32), “There are two Indian Nations upon this North Coast, the Epinette ... and the Ouassi, both tribes of the Sauteurs.” The tribe designated by this term seems to have disappeared in the nineteenth century.—Ed.

71. The Rat Indians are those of Rat Portage, on the Lake of the Woods, apparently a branch of the Chippewas. Their name is taken from the muskrat (*ondatra zibethicus*). See Coues, *Henry-Thompson Journals* (New York, 1897), i, p. 26.—Ed.

72. On Indian medicine-men and their skill as physicians, see Brinton, *Myths of the New World*, pp. 304–328; and *Jesuit Relations*, index, caption “Medicine-men.” See also Hoffman, “The Midewinin of the Ojibwa,” *United States Bureau of Ethnology Report*, 1885–86.—Ed.

73. According to Count Andrani of Milan, who was at Grand Portage in 1791, each pack was valued at £40 sterling, making the total value of Long’s first season nearly \$28,000. On the expenses of such an outfit, see *Canadian Archives*, 1888, p. 69.—Ed.

74. This is not the river now known as Pic River, which is east of Pays Plat, but one of the shorter streams between this and Nipigon River, probably the one now called Gravel River.—Ed.

75. For the difficulties of this passage from Pays Plat to Nipigon, see the account of the building of this section of the Canadian Pacific Railroad, in Ingersoll, *Canadian Guide-Book* (New York, 1892), ii, pp. 29, 30.—Ed.

76. For this lake, see Cameron, “Nipigon Country,” *Masson, Bourgeois*, ii, pp. 242, 244.—Ed.

77. For a brief description of the process of making a birch bark canoe, see McKinney, *Tour of the Lakes* (Baltimore, 1827), p. 319.—Ed.

78. Scuttaywabo is rum or brandy. See Long’s Chippewa vocabulary, at the end of the present volume.—Ed.

79. Tripe de roche is a lichen, which Henry calls waac in Chippewa. See Henry, *Travels* (Bain ed.), pp. 214, 215.—Ed.

80. On the subject of justice in the forest, as exercised by the British companies, see Bancroft, *Northwest Coast*, i, pp. 538–542.—Ed.

81. Fort Albany was built by the Hudson's Bay Company in the seventeenth century. It was in a sheltered inlet, forty yards from the borders of James Bay on the south side of Albany River. In 1686 it was attacked and captured by Troyes's expedition; and Iberville re-christened the post, Fort Ste. Anne. It remained in French hands until 1693, when retaken by the English, who never again lost it, although besieged by the French in 1704. The later fort was built on Factory Island, in the mouth of the river, about two and one-half miles from the old fort on the mainland.—Ed.

82. Joseph Robson went out to Hudson Bay in 1733, as a stone-mason, and was employed in the construction of Fort Churchill. He appears to have had disagreements with the governor, and returned to England in 1736. In 1744, he was again sent out as surveyor and superintendent of buildings at York factory, and explored the Nelson River. Returning to England in 1747, he testified on behalf of the Company in 1749, before the House of Commons committee; but some years later published a work, *An Account of Six Years' Residence in Hudson's Bay* (London, 1752), in which he animadverts against the treatment of servants and Indians by the Company's governors. Long attempts to controvert him in this paragraph; but on p. 170 he uses his testimony in favor of the management of the Company.—Ed.

83. For the history of the formation of the North West Company, see preface, ante, p. 16.—Ed.

84. The Cristinaux (Kiristinou, Killistinoe) Indians, now known as Crees, are Algonquian tribes who have always been associated with the Assiniboin (Assinipoils), a Siouan tribe derived early from the Yankton Dakotas. Their habitat has been the wilderness between Lake Superior and Hudson Bay, and the land to the west as far as the Assiniboin and Saskatchewan rivers. They were well known to the early French explorers (see Wisconsin

Historical Collections, xvi), and were the chief Indians with whom the Hudson's Bay Company traded. They still number over twelve thousand. See Henry, *Travels* (Bain ed.), p. 249.—Ed.

85. This was the work of Edward Umfreville, *Present State of Hudson's Bay* (London, 1790), written with a view of opposing the continuance of the Company's charter, and exposing the practices of the officers. Umfreville had been in the service of the Company from 1771 to 1782.—Ed.

86. On this subject of courtship and marriage, see also Grant, "Sauteux Indians," in Masson, *Bourgeois*, ii, pp. 319–321.—Ed.

87. The British fort at Mackinac was still upon the south shore of the strait, where Mackinaw City now stands; but the governor, Patrick Sinclair, had already begun the erection of a new fort on the island, to which the establishment moved in the spring of 1781. See "Story of Mackinac," in Thwaites's *How George Rogers Clark won the Northwest*.—Ed.

88. For a contemporary account of this well-known incident, see Henry, *Travels*, chaps. 8, 9, and 10.—Ed.

89. The "Poes" were the Potawatomi Indians (called Poux by the French). For their history and that of Fort St. Joseph, see vol. i of this series, pp. 115, 117.—Ed.

90. The Menominee Indians were called Folles-Avoines by the French, a name by which the latter designated both the grain (*zizania aquatica*), and this tribe of Indians whom they first found using it. They are Algonquian in language, and were originally encountered by Nicolet (1634) on the shores of Green Bay. This remained their habitat until they were removed to their present reservation in Shawano County, Wisconsin. For history of this tribe, see Wisconsin Historical Collections (especially vols. xvi and xvii); Hoffman, "Menomini Indians," U. S. Bureau of Ethnology Report, 1892–93; Jenks, "Wild Rice Gatherers of the Upper Lakes," *ibid.*, 1897–98.

No mention of such a barbarous custom as this is made by other writers. Long may have been misinformed.—Ed.

91. On the cause of this action of the Indian traders, alarmed at the reprisals being made by Spanish and Americans for the unsuccessful attack on St. Louis by the British party from Mackinac, see Wisconsin Historical Collections, vii, p. 176, note.

For biography of Charles Langlade, first Wisconsin settler, see Tassé's "Memoir," *ibid.*, pp. 123–185.—Ed.

92. This is a somewhat confused reference to George Rogers Clark's occupation of the Illinois country, and alliance with the Spaniards who controlled Louisiana. The fort here mentioned is St. Louis, for whose early history see vol. iii of this series, André Michaux's *Journal*, note 138. Spaniards were incensed at the British traders' methods in Upper Louisiana during this period.—Ed.

93. The commandant at Mackinac was Patrick Sinclair, for whose biography see Wisconsin Historical Collections, xi, p. 141, note. For documents dealing with the Revolution in this region, see *ibid.*, xi, pp. 97–212; and xii, pp. 49–55.—Ed.

94. The Outagamies, or Fox Indians (French, Renards), were first encountered by the French on Fox River, Wisconsin. A proud and warlike nation, they refused to yield to the French yoke. The long series of wars waged by them with the French was a great source of weakness to the colony of Canada, and prepared the way for its downfall. For the documents on these wars, see Wisconsin Historical Collections, xvi and xvii. Driven from their habitat in Eastern Wisconsin, about 1740, the Foxes joined with their kindred, the Sauks, and settled on the Mississippi, siding alternately with the British and Americans during the wars of the Revolution and of 1812–15. One band of the Sauks participated in the Black Hawk War (1832). At present the combined population of the Sauks and Foxes is about four hundred, located on a reservation in Iowa.

The Sioux were the Minnesota branch of this nation, under their chief Wabasha, q. v., post, note 87.—Ed.

95. Lac les Puans (Stinking Lake) was a name used by the French for Green Bay. The origin of this term was long supposed to be either in the ill-smelling shores or the filthy character of the native Puants (i. e., Winnebagoes). In Wisconsin Historical Collections, xvi, p. 360, however, an early writer testifies to the cleanliness of the Puants.

It appears that the original Algonquian name for these people, who are an offshoot from the Sioux, was Ouinepeg, a word which has come down to us in two forms—Winnipeg and Winnebago. The meaning of Ouinepeg was, “men of (or from) the fetid (or bad-smelling) water.” It is probable that these people may at one time have lived near a sulphur spring or on the shore of a salt lake. The earliest French inferred that the allusion was to the ocean; hence Nicolet’s appearance among the Winnebagoes on Green Bay (1634) attired as a mandarin, under the apprehension that these “Men of the Sea”—as they were called in some of the earlier French accounts—were Chinamen. Herein we have an illustration of the tenacity of the old theory that America was but an outlying portion of Asia. La Salle’s post at La Chine, near Montreal, which was so nicknamed because some thought it to be on the road to China, is another case in point. When the “Men of the Sea” were discovered to be ordinary Indians, their Algonquian appellation Ouinepeg was translated by the French into a less complimentary term, “Puants” (Stinkards). Given the name, the reputation of uncleanness soon followed. The Jesuit Relations frequently mentioned the matter; but by the time of the missionaries the old term of “Men of the Sea” appears to have been forgotten. See Wisconsin Historical Collections, xvi, p. 3, note, for citations; also Thwaites, *Stories of the Badger State* (New York, 1900), p. 30, for brief recital of the case—Ed.

96. The Foxes had been largely won to the American interest by the efforts of Godefroy Linctot, Sr., their trader at Prairie du Chien, and the emissaries of George Rogers Clark from the Illinois country.

Wabasha was a famous Sioux chief, first mentioned by the French commandant in 1740. Being devoted to the British side, he was dignified with the title of “general,” and was received with honors of war at Mackinac. He also visited Quebec several times, and was decorated by the British officials. His village was near the present site of Winona,

Minnesota. A son of the same name participated in the War of 1812–15. The French called both these chiefs, “La Feuille.”—Ed.

97. On the origin of this term for Americans (Great Knives, Long Knives, or Big Knives, indifferently) see Thwaites, Daniel Boone (New York, 1902), p. 111, note.—Ed.

98. This must mean seven days’ journey either from Mackinac or Green Bay, for Prairie du Chien is situated at the confluence of the Wisconsin with the Mississippi. On the early settlement of Prairie du Chien, which was named for a chief of the Fox tribe called “Chien,” see Wisconsin Historical Collections, ix, pp. 282–302.—Ed.

99. Lake Temiscaming lies near the source of the Ottawa River, on the boundary between Quebec and Ontario. The savages near here were wandering tribes of rude Algonkins, who traded indifferently with Canada or Hudson Bay.—Ed.

100. Tadoussac, at the entrance of the Saguenay River, is one of the oldest trading stations on the St. Lawrence, having been founded before Quebec. It was the site of an early Jesuit mission begun before 1642. A church built for the mission (1747–50), is still standing.—Ed.

101. The mission colony of the Hurons at Lorette was established by the Jesuits on their seigniorship in 1673. There is still a settlement of these Indians near this place.—Ed.

102. For biographical sketch of Robert Rogers, see vol. i, Croghan’s Journals, note 61. Long here refers to his work, Concise Account of North America (London, 1765).—Ed.

103. Henry Home, Lord Kames, a famous Scotch jurist, published Sketches of History of Man (Edinburgh, 1774).—Ed.

104. The Montagnais Indians—so called from their habitat, the mountainous country north and east of Quebec—were an Algonquian tribe, much in contact with the French colonists.

They still roam through their ancient territory, hunting and fishing, and acting as guides to scientific and sporting parties. They have a reservation on Lake St. John.—Ed.

105. Chicoutimi, at the head of navigation of Saguenay River, was early settled, a mission church being built there in 1726. It has but recently become a place of importance, being not only the chief trading station for the entire Saguenay region, where settlement has commenced to be permanent, but the seat of large salmon fisheries and of extensive wood-pulp mills; small ocean vessels are now laden with pulp at Chicoutimi docks, carrying the product to English, French, and American ports.—Ed.

106. After leaving Lake St. John, Long followed its sources westward, and portaged over the Height of Land into the present Northeast Territory—a region now nearly as unknown and unexplored as it was then. Modern maps are not helpful regarding Long's route.—Ed.

107. The true rattlesnake (*crotatus horridus*) is not found in Canada. The one here alluded to is the *caudisona tergemina*. The age is not indicated by the number of the rattles. The black water snake was probably the *tropidonatus sipedon*, which feeds on fish, and is an expert swimmer, although not a true water snake. The “turkey snake” cannot be identified.—Ed.

108. This was the expedition of La Pérouse, who in the summer of 1782 captured Fort Prince of Wales and York factory. See Wilson, *The Great Company* (Toronto, 1899), pp. 320–326.—Ed.

109. Lake George was originally named Lac du St. Sacrement, by the Jesuit missionary and martyr Isaac Jogues, who was there in 1646. On his expedition of 1755, Sir William Johnson changed the name in honor of his king. Lakes George and Champlain were of strategic importance in all the French wars, and that of the Revolution. Fort George was a small post on an eminence a half mile southeast of Fort William Henry, built in 1759 after the destruction of the latter. Abandoned temporarily during Burgoyne's invasion, the garrison were surprised and captured by Carleton (October, 1780), and the fortification destroyed. New York State has appropriated the land around the ruins of this fort for Fort George Battle Park.—Ed.

110. For a description of the road from St. Johns on the Richelieu River, at the outlet of Lake Champlain—where the French built a fort in 1748—to La Prairie on the St. Lawrence, see Kalm, *Travels in North America* (London, 2nd ed., 1772), ii, pp. 219–223.—Ed.

111. Crown Point, called by the French *Pointe au Chevalure* (scalp point), was fortified by the latter nation in 1731, as their advanced post (Fort St. Frédéric) on the northern frontier. During the French and Indian War it was twice attacked by the English; but the French retained possession until Amherst's expedition (1759), when Fort St. Frédéric was abandoned and destroyed. Amherst began here extensive fortifications, the ruins of which still exist. Crown Point was captured by the Americans in 1775, and restored to the British in 1776. After 1780 it was dismantled and fell into decay, so that Long could have found but deserted quarters at this place.—Ed.

112. This incident indicates the low state of the credit of the United States. Congress passed the act for the relief of this Indian, April 8, 1785, as follows: "On report of a committee, consisting of Mr. Howell, Mr. Long, and Mr. Holton, to whom was referred a petition of John Vincent, an Indian of the Huron tribe, Resolved, That in consideration of the faithful services of John Vincent, an Indian of the Huron tribe, in the course of the late war, he be allowed and paid by the commissioners of the treasury, the sum 100 dollars.—*Journals of Congress* (Philadelphia, 1801), x, p. 82.—Ed.

113. Hendrick was the well-known Mohawk chief, born about 1680, whose friendship for the English and especially for Sir William Johnson kept his tribe firm in the English alliance during the French wars. Hendrick lived at Canajoharie in the Mohawk Valley. At the Albany Conference (1754), he was one of the most prominent negotiators; but was killed in the battle of Lake George the following year.—Ed.

114. Schenectady boats were long, narrow, flat-bottoms, propelled by small and ungainly sails, or by iron-shod poles. They were so named from being first built at Schenectady, and were much used in the shallow water navigation of Western New York and the Upper St. Lawrence.—Ed.

115. The Canadian government was at this period granting large areas of land north of the St. Lawrence, and of Lake Ontario, to the Loyalists of the United States, who were removing thither. Two hundred acres were given to each settler; and higher amounts, according to rank, to those who had served in the British army. See Canniff, *History of the Settlement of Upper Canada* (Toronto, 1869).—Ed.

116. Guy Carleton, Lord Dorchester, served with Amherst at Louisburg, in 1758. The next year he was wounded at the siege of Quebec. In 1766 he was made governor of Quebec, and was governor of Canada, 1767–70. In 1775, he was again made governor of Quebec, and defended Canada against the American forces until relieved by Haldimand in 1778. In 1782, he succeeded Clinton as commander in chief of the forces in America, and having evacuated New York in 1783, returned with the troops to England. He was created Baron Dorchester in 1786, and appointed governor general of Canada, whither he arrived in October, serving as the ruler of this province until 1796, when he retired to England, where he died in 1808.

Henry Hope, lieutenant colonel of the 44th regiment, came to America in 1776, and served throughout the war. In November, 1785, he was made lieutenant-governor of Canada, and served as acting governor until the arrival of Dorchester, under whom he continued as lieutenant-governor until his death at Quebec, April 13, 1789.—Ed.

117. Sir John Johnson was the son and heir of Sir William Johnson, the New York Indian agent. Born in the Mohawk Valley in 1742, he received part of his education in England, and was knighted there in 1765. He succeeded to his father's position and estates in 1774; and on the outbreak of the Revolution escaped to Canada, where he was made colonel in the British army. His services during the war, leading Iroquois against the border settlements in the Mohawk and Cherry Valley, are well known. His estates were confiscated by the State of New York, and he retired to Canada, where he was made superintendent general of Indian affairs in British North America. His death occurred at Montreal in 1830.—Ed.

118. In the surveys made in 1783–84, preliminary to the Loyalists' settlement, ten townships were set off in Quinté Bay, which were long known by their respective numbers. The third township was that now called Fredericksburgh, and was chiefly settled by Johnson's disbanded soldiers.—Ed.

119. On the land system of Canada, see Canniff, History of Settlement of Upper Canada; and Kingsford, History of Canada (London and Toronto, 1894), vii, pp. 300–313. The feudal tenure was not abolished in Quebec until 1854; but the Act of 1791, separating Upper from Lower Canada, decreed a modern system for the Loyalist settlements.—Ed.

Important

Historical Publications

OF

The Arthur H. Clark Company

Full descriptive circulars will be mailed on application

“The bare title hardly conveys an idea of the interesting lore embraced in this admirably carried out study of the roads and their part in the development of the country.”—Boston Globe.

The Historic Highways of America

by Archer Butler Hulbert

A series of monographs on the History of America as portrayed in the evolution of its highways of War, Commerce, and Social Expansion.

Comprising the following volumes:

I—

Paths of the Mound-Building Indians and Great Game Animals.

II—

Indian Thoroughfares.

III—

Washington’s Road: The First Chapter of the Old French War.

IV—

Braddock's Road.

V—

The Old Glade (Forbes's) Road.

VI—

Boone's Wilderness Road.

VII—

Portage Paths: The Keys of the Continent

VIII—

Military Roads of the Mississippi Basin.

IX—

Waterways of Westward Expansion.

X—

The Cumberland Road.

XI, XII—

Pioneer Roads of America, two volumes.

XIII, XIV—

The Great American Canals, two volumes.

XV—

The Future of Road-Making in America.

XVI—

Index.

Sixteen volumes, crown 8vo, cloth, uncut, gilt tops. A limited edition only printed direct from type, and the type distributed. Each volume handsomely printed in large type on Dickinson's hand-made paper, and illustrated with maps, plates, and facsimiles.

Published a volume each two months, beginning September, 1902.

Price, volumes 1 and 2, \$2.00 net each; volumes 3 to 16, \$2.50 net each.

Fifty sets printed on large paper, each numbered and signed by the author. Bound in cloth, with paper label, uncut, gilt tops. Price, \$5.00 net per volume.

“The history of American trails and carries in colonial times; of paths, roads, and highways in our national beginnings; and of our great lake, river, and railroad traffic in later times is and has been of the first importance in our social and political history. Mr. Hulbert has shown himself abundantly able to investigate the subject and put in good form the results of his labors.”—Professor William M. Sloane, Princeton University.

“Mr. Hulbert has evidently mastered his subject, and has treated it very ably and enthusiastically. History is too frequently a mere collection of dry bones, but here we have a book which, when once begun, will be read eagerly to the end, so vividly does the author bring scenes and personages before us.”—Current Literature.

“As in the prior volumes, the general effect is that of a most entertaining series. The charm of the style is evident.”—American Historical Review.

“His style is effective ... an invaluable contribution to the makings of American History.”—New York Evening Post.

“Should fill an important and unoccupied place in American historical literature.”—The Dial.

“The most important project ever undertaken in the line of Philippine history in any language, above all the English.”—New York Evening Post.

The Philippine Islands

1493–1898

Being the history of the Philippines from their discovery to the present time

Explorations by early Navigators, descriptions of the Islands and their Peoples, their History, and records of the Catholic Missions, as related in contemporaneous books and manuscripts, showing the political, economic, commercial, and religious conditions of those Islands from their earliest relations with European Nations to the end of the nineteenth century.

Translated, and edited and annotated by E. H. Blair and J. A. Robertson, with introduction and additional notes by E. G. Bourne.

With Analytical Index and Illustrations. Limited edition, 55 volumes, large 8vo, cloth, uncut, gilt top. Price \$4.00 net per volume.

“The work is second in importance only to the original documents; to the student it is even of greater value, since it places before him translations of these historical data which would otherwise be totally inaccessible, and without which no work on the Philippines could be definitive.”—American Anthropologist.

“At the present time few subjects are discussed so widely and so ignorantly as matters relating to the Philippines.”—Chicago Chronicle.

“In addition to its value as accurate history, the work is full of interest and of suggestions of thrilling mediæval romance and adventure among strange scenes and wild people.”—Philadelphia Telegraph.

TRANSCRIBER'S NOTES

Page Changed from Changed to

70 added the perfect notes of the different war hoops, as added the perfect notes of the different war whoops, as

206 cargo. On the 9th of November we felt Newfoundland, cargo. On the 9th of November we left Newfoundland,

Typos fixed; non-standard spelling and dialect retained.

Placed footnotes all at the end of the last chapter.

*** END OF THE PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK EARLY WESTERN TRAVELS, 1748-1846,
VOLUME 2 (OF 2) ***

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from print editions not protected by U.S. copyright law means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG™ concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for an eBook, except by following the terms of the trademark license, including paying royalties for use of the Project Gutenberg trademark. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the trademark license is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. Project Gutenberg eBooks may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING in the United States with eBooks not protected by U.S. copyright law. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

START: FULL LICENSE

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE

PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase “Project Gutenberg”), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg™ License available with this file or online at www.gutenberg.org/license.

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg™ electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of

Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. “Project Gutenberg” is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg™ electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg™ electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation (“the Foundation” or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is unprotected by copyright law in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg™ mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg™ works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg™ name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg™ License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg™ work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country other than the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg™ License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg™ work (any work on which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” appears, or with

which the phrase “Project Gutenberg” is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere in the United States and most other parts of the world at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org. If you are not located in the United States, you will have to check the laws of the country where you are located before using this eBook.

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is derived from texts not protected by U.S. copyright law (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase “Project Gutenberg” associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg™ trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg™ electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg™ License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg™ License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg™.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg™ License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg™ work in a format other than “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg™ website (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original “Plain Vanilla ASCII” or other form.

Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg™ License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg™ works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg™ electronic works provided that:

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg™ works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, “Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation.”
- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg™ License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg™ works.
- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.
- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg™ works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the manager of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread works not protected by U.S. copyright law in creating the Project Gutenberg™ collection. Despite these efforts, Project

Gutenberg™ electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain “Defects,” such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the “Right of Replacement or Refund” described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg™ trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg™ electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH 1.F.3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you ‘AS-IS’, WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg™ electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg™ work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg™ work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg™

Project Gutenberg™ is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg™'s goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg™ collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg™ and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation information page at www.gutenberg.org.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non-profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's business office is located at 809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's website and official page at www.gutenberg.org/contact

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg™ depends upon and cannot survive without widespread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine-readable form accessible by the

widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations (\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit www.gutenberg.org/donate.

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: www.gutenberg.org/donate.

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg™ electronic works

Professor Michael S. Hart was the originator of the Project Gutenberg™ concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For forty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg™ eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg™ eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as not protected by copyright in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our website which has the main PG search facility:
www.gutenberg.org.

This website includes information about Project Gutenberg™, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.